Alloimmune disorders of pregnancy
Anaemia, thrombocytopenia and neutropenia in the fetus and newborn

Collectively known as the alloimmune cytopenias, haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn, alloimmune thrombocytopenia and alloimmune neutropenia are all consequences of maternal immunization to fetal blood cells. The effective prevention, diagnosis and management of these disorders has become a team effort involving haematologists, obstetricians, paediatricians, immunologists, laboratory technicians, midwives and research scientists. This book has been written by experts in their respective fields to bring together the issues of pathogenesis, epidemiology, prevention, diagnosis and clinical management. This comprehensive but accessible account is extensively cross-referenced to emphasize the links between pathogenesis and clinical sequelae, between epidemiology and the rationale for screening programmes, and between diagnosis and therapeutic intervention.

This is an authoritative overview suitable for trainees in obstetrics, maternal and fetal medicine, transfusion medicine and clinical immunology.

Dr Andrew Hadley is Division Manager at the International Blood Group Reference Laboratory and Senior Scientist at the Bristol Institute for Transfusion Sciences, University of Bristol.

Professor Peter Soothill is Professor of Maternal and Fetal Medicine and Head of the Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, St Michael’s Hospital and University of Bristol.
Alloimmune disorders of pregnancy

Anaemia, thrombocytopenia and neutropenia in the fetus and newborn

Edited by
Andrew G Hadley
International Blood Group Reference Laboratory,
Southmead Road, Bristol

and

Peter Soothill
Department of Maternal and Fetal Medicine,
St Michael's Hospital,
Southwell Street, Bristol
# Contents

*List of contributors*  
*Preface*  
*Foreword*  
*List of abbreviations*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1</strong> Pathophysiology of the alloimmune cytopenias</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrew G Hadley and Craig Turner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Maternal alloimmunization</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1 Some key events in the humoral immune response</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2 The maternal alloimmune response to fetal red cells</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3 The maternal alloimmune response to fetal platelets</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.4 The maternal alloimmune response to fetal neutrophils</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Transfer of IgG to the fetus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 The immune destruction of blood cells in the fetus</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1 IgG and Fcγ receptors</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.2 The immune destruction of fetal red cells</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.3 The immune destruction of fetal platelets</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.4 The immune destruction of fetal neutrophils</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Conclusions</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 References</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2</strong> Blood group antibodies in haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geoff Daniels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Introduction</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Blood group terminology</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 The genetics of blood groups</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 The effect of antigen expression on the pathogenicity and severity of HDFN</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5 Antibodies that most commonly cause moderate or severe HDFN</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Basis and practice of screening for haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn

Geoff Poole

3.1 Introduction

3.2 The basis of screening for HDFN

3.3 Antenatal screening tests performed in the blood transfusion laboratory
   3.3.1 Antiglobulin methods
   3.3.2 Enzyme methods
   3.3.3 The choice of red cells for screening tests
   3.3.4 Manual versus automated methods
   3.3.5 Timing of screening tests

3.4 The identification of red cell alloantibodies
   3.4.1 Methods
   3.4.2 The principles of antibody identification
   3.4.3 Difficulties encountered in antibody identification
   3.4.4 Implications of detecting a red cell alloantibody during pregnancy

3.5 Paternal and fetal phenotyping
   3.5.1 Paternal phenotype
   3.5.2 Fetal phenotype

3.6 Laboratory tests immediately following delivery

3.7 References
4 Epidemiology and screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia
Lorna M Williamson and Michael F Murphy

4.1 Background
4.2 Epidemiology and the natural history of alloimmune thrombocytopenia
4.2.1 The incidence of maternal alloimmunization
4.2.2 The incidence of fetal thrombocytopenia due to maternal alloimmunization
4.2.3 The incidence of intracranial haemorrhage and other sequelae
4.2.4 The influence of obstetric history on clinical outcome
4.3 Criteria for antenatal screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia
4.3.1 The condition should be an important health problem
4.3.2 The epidemiology of the condition should be known
4.3.3 The natural history of the condition should be understood
4.3.4 There should be a recognized latent period or early asymptomatic stage
4.3.5 All the cost-effective primary prevention interventions should have been implemented as far as practicable
4.3.6 There should be a simple, safe, precise and validated screening test
4.3.7 The distribution of test values in the target population should be known and a suitable cut-off level defined and agreed
4.3.8 The test should be acceptable to the population
4.3.9 There should be an agreed policy on the further diagnostic investigation of individuals with a positive result and on the choices available to those individuals
4.3.10 There should be an effective treatment or intervention for patients identified through early detection
4.3.11 There should be agreed evidence-based policies covering which individuals should be offered treatment and the appropriate treatment to be offered
4.3.12 Clinical management of the condition and patient outcomes should be optimized by all health providers prior to participation in a screening programme

5 Principles of antibody-mediated immune suppression and the prevention of maternal RhD alloimmunization
Belinda Kumpel

5.1 Haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn due to anti-D
5.2 Experimental studies on the prevention of RhD immunization
5.3 Clinical studies on the efficacy of RhD prophylaxis
  5.3.1 Dose of anti-D
  5.3.2 The current situation
5.4 Characteristics and requirements of RhD prophylaxis
  5.4.1 Ratio of antibody to antigen required for suppression
  5.4.2 Relationship of red cell clearance to antibody-mediated immune suppression
  5.4.3 Protection afforded by ABO antibodies
  5.4.4 Role of the spleen in RhD prophylaxis
  5.4.5 Timing of passive anti-D
  5.4.6 Time of detection of anti-D response
  5.4.7 Effect of passive anti-D on subsequent immunization
  5.4.8 Effect of passive anti-D on an established primary response
  5.4.9 Role of anti-D Fc fragments
  5.4.10 Epitope specificity
5.5 Theories of the mechanism of action of prophylactic anti-D
  5.5.1 Inhibition of B cells by crosslinking heterologous receptors
  5.5.2 Anti-idiotypic antibodies
  5.5.3 Masking of antigen sites
  5.5.4 Clearance and destruction of D-positive red cells
5.6 Development of monoclonal anti-D for RhD prophylaxis
  5.6.1 Production of monoclonal anti-D
  5.6.2 Half-lives of monoclonal anti-D
  5.6.3 In vitro functional activity of monoclonal anti-D
  5.6.4 In vivo red cell clearance mediated by monoclonal anti-D
  5.6.5 Suppression of the anti-D response by monoclonal anti-D
5.7 References

6 The clinical application of anti-D prophylaxis

Stan Urbaniak

6.1 Epidemiology
  6.1.1 Causes and incidence of alloimmunization
  6.1.2 Ethnic groups
  6.1.3 Use of D-negative transfusions for young women
  6.1.4 Relative importance of anti-D before and after the introduction of anti-D prophylaxis programmes
6.2 Prophylaxis programmes
  6.2.1 Suppression of the immune response
  6.2.2 Recommendations and guidelines
  6.2.3 Effectiveness in Caucasian populations
Contents

6.2.4 Reasons for continued failures 101
6.2.5 Anti-D immunization during pregnancy 102
6.2.6 Antenatal administration of anti-D immunoglobulin 102
6.2.7 Anti-D immunoglobulin use on women with weak D or partial D 104
6.2.8 Anti-D immunoglobulin use after the accidental transfusion of D-positive red cells 104
6.3 Detection of fetal red cells in the maternal circulation 105
6.3.1 The Kleihauer–Betke acid-elution test 106
6.3.2 Flow cytometry 106
6.3.3 Serological tests of fetomaternal haemorrhage 107
6.3.4 Calculating the size of fetomaternal haemorrhage 107
6.4 Fetomaternal haemorrhage and dose of anti-D immunoglobulin 108
6.4.1 Fetomaternal haemorrhage at delivery 108
6.4.2 Bleeding during pregnancy 108
6.4.3 Spontaneous fetomaternal haemorrhage during first, second and third trimesters 109
6.4.4 Other significant events during pregnancy 110
6.4.5 Fetomaternal haemorrhage due to medical procedures 110
6.4.6 Calculation of the required dose of anti-D 111
6.5 Procurement of hyperimmune anti-D 112
6.5.1 Identification, recruitment, boosting and accreditation of donors 112
6.5.2 Manufacture of anti-D immunoglobulin and safety considerations 113
6.6 Economics of prophylaxis programmes 114
6.6.1 Cost-effectiveness of antenatal versus postnatal prophylaxis 114
6.7 Future developments 115
6.8 References 116

7 Fetal genotyping 121
Neil D Avent
7.1 Introduction 121
7.2 The polymerase chain reaction 121
7.2.1 Principle of the polymerase chain reaction 121
7.2.2 Polymerase chain reaction – restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis 122
7.2.3 Allele-specific primer amplification 122
7.3 PCR-based typing for clinically significant blood groups 124
7.3.1 The Rh system 125
7.3.2 Kell system 130
7.3.3 Duffy system 131
7.3.4 Kidd system 132
7.3.5 ABO system 132
11.5.3 Indications for transfusion 209
11.6 Treatment of neonatal jaundice 210
  11.6.1 Phototherapy 210
  11.6.2 Exchange blood transfusion 210
  11.6.3 An integrated approach to treating neonatal jaundice 212
11.7 Experimental treatments 214
11.8 References 214

12 The diagnosis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia 219
Andrew G Hadley

12.1 Clinical aspects of diagnosis 219
12.2 Platelet antigen systems 220
  12.2.1 Platelet antigens on glycoprotein IIb/IIIa 220
  12.2.2 Platelet antigens on glycoprotein Ia/IIa 221
  12.2.3 Platelet antigens on glycoprotein Ib/IX/V 221
12.3 Platelet antibody specificities involved in alloimmune thrombocytopenia 221
12.4 Laboratory diagnosis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia 224
  12.4.1 Haematology 224
  12.4.2 Assays for the detection of antiplatelet antibodies 225
  12.4.3 DNA-based genotyping 227
  12.4.4 Antibody characteristics and disease severity 228
12.5 Future perspectives 228
12.6 References 229

13 The immunological diagnosis of alloimmune neutropenia 235
Geoff Lucas

13.1 Introduction 235
13.2 Pathophysiology and clinical history 235
  13.2.1 Immunogenicity of fetal neutrophils 235
  13.2.2 Clinical manifestations and haematological findings 235
  13.2.3 Differential diagnosis 236
13.3 The structure and function of antigens involved in alloimmune neutropenia 238
  13.3.1 Nomenclature 238
  13.3.2 Granulocyte-specific antigens 239
  13.3.3 ‘Shared’ antigens 243
  13.3.4 Antibody specificities involved in alloimmune neutropenia 244
  13.3.5 The function of granulocyte antigens 244
13.4 Laboratory diagnosis of alloimmune neutropenia 245
  13.4.1 Assays for granulocyte antibodies 245
14 Fetal and neonatal treatment of alloimmune thrombocytopenia
Michael F Murphy, Rachel Rayment, David Allen and David Roberts

14.1 Introduction 253
14.2 Neonatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia 254
  14.2.1 Platelet transfusion 254
  14.2.2 Intravenous immunoglobulin 256
  14.2.3 Monitoring of the effectiveness of neonatal treatment 257
14.3 Antenatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia 257
  14.3.1 Fetal blood sampling 258
  14.3.2 Maternal treatment 259
  14.3.3 Fetal platelet transfusion 263
  14.3.4 Serial fetal platelet transfusions compared with maternal administration of high-dose intravenous immunoglobulin 267
  14.3.5 Timing of the initial fetal blood sample 268
  14.3.6 Strategy for the antenatal management of pregnancies at risk of very early intracranial haemorrhage 269
14.4 Preparation of platelet concentrates for transfusion in cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia 270
  14.4.1 Provision of HPA-typed platelets for neonates with alloimmune thrombocytopenia 270
  14.4.2 Identification and recruitment of HPA-1a-negative and HPA-5b-negative donors 270
  14.4.3 Preparation of platelet concentrates for fetal transfusions 271
14.5 Future directions 272
14.6 References 274

Index 279
Contributors

Sherif Abdel-Fattah
Clinical Research Fellow, Fetal Medicine
Research Unit, St Michael's Hospital,
Southwell Street, Bristol, BS2 8EG, UK

David Allen
Head of the Platelet Immunology
Laboratory, National Blood Service, John
Radcliffe Hospital, Oxford, OX3 9DU, UK
dave.allen@nbs.nhs.uk

Neil D Avent
Senior Lecturer, University of the West of
England, Coldharbour Lane, Bristol, BS16
1QY, UK
neil.avent@uwe.ac.uk

Geoff Daniels
Senior Research Fellow, Bristol Institute for
Transfusion Sciences, Southmead Road,
Bristol, BS10 5ND, UK
geoff.daniels@nbs.nhs.uk

Nic Goulden
Consultant Senior Lecturer in Paediatric
Haematology, The Bristol Children’s
Hospital, St Michael’s Hill, Bristol, BS2 8BJ,
UK

Andreas G Hadley
Divisional Manager, International Blood
Group Reference Laboratory, Southmead
Road, Bristol, BS10 5ND, UK
andrew.hadley@nbs.nhs.uk

Belinda Kumpel
Senior Research Scientist, Bristol Institute
for Transfusion Sciences, Southmead Road,
Bristol, BS10 5ND, UK
belinda.kumpel@nbs.nhs.uk

Geoff Lucas
Head of Platelet and Granulocyte
Immunology, International Blood Group
Reference Laboratory, Bristol, BS10 5ND,
UK
geoff.lucas@nbs.nhs.uk

Kenneth J Moise Jr
Professor of Obstetrics and Gynecology and
Director, Division of Maternal-Fetal
Medicine, University of North Carolina
School of Medicine, Chapel Hill, NC27599-
7570, USA
kmoisejr@med.unc.edu
List of contributors

Michael F Murphy
Consultant Haematologist, National Blood Service and University of Oxford, John Radcliffe Hospital, Oxford, OX3 9DU, UK
mike.murphy@nbs.nhs.uk

Geoff Poole
Head of Red Cell Immunohaematology, National Blood Service, Southmead Road, Bristol, BS10 5ND, UK
geoff.poole@nbs.nhs.uk

Rachel Rayment
Consultant Haematologist, National Blood Service, John Radcliffe Hospital, Oxford, OX3 9DU, UK

David Roberts
Consultant Haematologist, National Blood Service and University of Oxford, John Radcliffe Hospital, Oxford, OX3 9DU, UK
david.roberts@nbs.nhs.uk

Glynn Russell
Consultant Neonatal Paediatrician, The Bristol Children’s Hospital, St Michael’s Hill, Bristol, BS2 8BJ, UK

Peter Soothill
Professor of Maternal and Fetal Medicine and Head of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, St Michael’s Hospital, Southwell Street, Bristol, BS2 8EG, UK
peter.soothill@bristol.ac.uk

Craig Turner
Research Scientist, Bristol Institute for Transfusion Sciences, Southmead Road, Bristol, BS10 5ND, UK
craig.turner@nbs.nhs.uk

Stan Urbaniak
Professor of Transfusion Medicine, Scottish National Blood Transfusion Service and University of Aberdeen, Royal National Infirmary, Foresterhill, Aberdeen, AB9 2ZW, UK
s.j.urbaniak@abdn.ac.uk

Paul W Whitecar
Fellow, Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, University of North Carolina School of Medicine, Chapel Hill, NC 27599-7570, USA

Lorna M Williamson
Consultant Haematologist and Senior Lecturer, National Blood Service and University of Cambridge, Long Road, Cambridge, CB2 2PT, UK
lorna.williamson@nbs.nhs.uk
Definitions and terminology

The alloimmune cytopenias are a group of conditions in which the life span of fetal blood cells or their precursors is shortened by the action of antibodies derived from the mother by placental transfer. Three conditions are recognized: antibodies to fetal red cells, platelets or neutrophils, or their precursors, cause alloimmune anaemia, thrombocytopenia or neutropenia, respectively. Various terms are in common usage for these disorders, many of them inappropriate. For example, alloimmune anaemia is sometimes referred to as Rhesus disease, erythroblastosis fetalis or haemolytic disease of the newborn and all three are misnomers. It is incorrect to use ‘Rhesus’ to refer to the Rh system, fetal haemolysis may be caused by antibodies outside the Rh system, anaemia is not always associated with erythroblastosis and, finally, the disorder primarily affects the fetus rather than the newborn. Therefore, throughout this book, alloimmune anaemia (perhaps the best term) will be referred to as haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn (HDFN). For similar reasons, alloimmune thrombocytopenia and alloimmune neutropenia will be used in preference to other terms, such as neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia, fetomaternal alloimmune thrombocytopenia and neonatal alloimmune neutropenia, while, at the same time, acknowledging that these terms are also commonly used.

The multidisciplinary approach to the management of the alloimmune cytopenias

The last 10 years of the 20th century saw significant advances in the management of alloimmunized pregnant women; immunologists made progress characterizing the molecular basis of the alloimmune response; molecular biologists solved the genetic basis for all the clinically important blood groups and developed DNA-based fetal typing assays; epidemiologists and health care economists developed a better understanding of the natural history of the alloimmune cytopenias and the
cost-effectiveness of preventative programmes; obstetricians and fetal medicine specialists progressed the use of noninvasive fetal monitoring techniques; and haematologists improved the safety and efficacy of the various fetal transfusion therapies. With significant advances being made on so many fronts, the optimal prevention, diagnosis and management of alloimmunized pregnant women has become a team effort involving haematologists, obstetricians, paediatricians, immunologists, laboratory technicians in hospitals and transfusion centres, midwives and research scientists. However, it is rare for the individuals who contribute to this team effort to have a comprehensive overview of all the laboratory and clinical aspects associated with the alloimmune cytopenias.

Our intention in producing this book has been to bring the issues of pathogenesis, epidemiology, prevention, diagnosis and management together in a way which is both comprehensive and relevant to the various professionals involved. To this end, we have tried to avoid subspecialty jargon and to limit the use of abbreviations as far as possible because those used daily by laboratory scientists may be less familiar to clinicians and vice versa.
Foreword

This book is a very good idea. It brings together all the different aspects of the alloimmune cytopenias that are needed to understand them. The two most important are the red cell and the platelet cytopenias and they have features in common as well as characteristics that sharply differentiate them. For each condition, consideration is given to the genetics, the pathophysiology, the evidence for the efficacy and cost-effectiveness of screening and prevention, and to the management of the affected fetus and neonate. To have authoritative chapters on all these topics within the covers of one book is extremely helpful both for those who are new to these clinical problems and for those who, like the author of this foreword, have been grappling with them for over 20 years. The editors and their multidisciplinary team are to be congratulated and thanked for producing this valuable synthesis.

Professor Charles H Rodeck
Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology
Royal Free and University College London Medical School
### Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADCC</td>
<td>Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMIS</td>
<td>Antibody-mediated immune suppression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARMS</td>
<td>Amplification refractory mutation system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASPA</td>
<td>Allele-specific primer amplification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3</td>
<td>Third component of complement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>Cluster of differentiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLT</td>
<td>Chemiluminescence test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMV</td>
<td>Cytomegalovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTG</td>
<td>Cardiotocography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAGT</td>
<td>Direct antiglobulin test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELISA</td>
<td>Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBS</td>
<td>Fetal blood sampling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FcγR</td>
<td>Fc gamma receptor (receptor for the Fc domain of IgG)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAT</td>
<td>Granulocyte agglutination test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GIFT</td>
<td>Granulocyte immunofluorescence test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HbsAg</td>
<td>Hepatitis B surface antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCV</td>
<td>Hepatitis C virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCV</td>
<td>Human immunodeficiency virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA</td>
<td>Human platelet antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTLV</td>
<td>Human lymphotropic virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAGT</td>
<td>Indirect antiglobulin test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICH</td>
<td>Intracranial haemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL</td>
<td>Interleukin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ig</td>
<td>Immunoglobulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>im</td>
<td>Intramuscularly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IU</td>
<td>International Units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUT</td>
<td>Intrauterine transfusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv</td>
<td>Intravenously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVIG</td>
<td>Intravenous immunoglobulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hb</td>
<td>Haemoglobin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### List of abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HDFN</td>
<td>Haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLA</td>
<td>Human leukocyte antigen or histocompatibility locus antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA</td>
<td>Human platelet antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNA</td>
<td>Human neutrophil antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KD</td>
<td>Kilodalton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LISS</td>
<td>Low ionic strength saline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAIGA</td>
<td>Monoclonal antibody immobilization of granulocyte antigens assay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAIPA</td>
<td>Monoclonal antibody immobilization of platelet antigens assay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMA</td>
<td>Monocyte monolayer assay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Δ$\text{OD}_{450}$</td>
<td>Optical density at a wavelength of 450 nm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>Polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEG</td>
<td>Polyethylene glycol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIFT</td>
<td>Platelet immunofluorescence test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFLP</td>
<td>Restriction fragment length polymorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNP</td>
<td>Single nucleotide polymorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAV</td>
<td>Time-averaged mean velocity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPH</td>
<td>Transplacental haemorrhage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pathophysiology of the alloimmune cytopenias

Andrew G Hadley¹ and Craig Turner²
¹ International Blood Group Reference Laboratory, Bristol, UK
² Bristol Institute for Transfusion Sciences, Bristol, UK

The pathogenesis of the alloimmune cytopenias can be considered in four stages: alloimmunization of the mother, the placental transfer of antibodies to a fetus, the immune destruction of sensitized blood cells and, finally, clinical manifestations which are secondary to the destruction of fetal blood cells such as hydrops, haemorrhage or infection.

1.1 Maternal Alloimmunization

1.1.1 Some key events in the humoral immune response

A comprehensive review of humoral immune responses is outside the scope of this chapter. Nevertheless, a brief consideration of the cells and some of the key processes which result in the production of antibodies is pertinent to several topics covered in this book such as the genetic predisposition to form certain alloantibodies (Section 1.1.3), the mode of action of Rh prophylaxis (Section 5.5), and the basis of new approaches to ameliorate maternal alloimmune responses (Section 14.5). These key steps are shown diagrammatically in Figure 1.1.

Two phases of an immune response are distinguished. The primary response results in very low or undetectable levels of circulating antibody. The second anamnestic response is characterized by much higher concentrations of antibody. The immune response starts with the nonspecific uptake of an antigen by antigen-presenting cells in lymphoid centres such as the spleen and lymph nodes. Internalized antigens are then incorporated into phagolysosomes where they are partially degraded by proteolytic enzymes to peptide fragments. The peptides then associate with HLA class II molecules before being returned to the cell surface and so ‘presented’ to helper T cells. Interdigitating dendritic cells are particularly efficient at presenting antigen and during a primary immune response they are probably the only cell capable of effective antigen presentation to resting helper T cells. However, B cells can also present antigen and, in secondary immune responses, B
Figure 1.1 Critical steps in the humoral immune response.

Antigens are processed and presented to helper T cells by dendritic cells. In the presence of appropriate secondary signals, helper T cells proliferate and signal antigen-specific B cells to proliferate and secrete antibody.

(a) Co-stimulatory molecules on antigen-presenting cells bind to their ligands on helper T cells; lymphocyte functional antigen 3 (LFA-3) binds to CD2, intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) binds to LFA-1, CD80/CD86 binds to CD28.
cells with high affinity immunoglobulin antigen receptors may be the most effective antigen-presenting cells.

As mentioned above, peptides are ‘seen’ by helper T cells when presented as complexes with HLA class II molecules. The binding of peptides to HLA class II molecules depends on complementarity between the peptide and the groove within the HLA molecule. Since the precise topology of the peptide-binding groove of HLA molecules varies according to the HLA allele(s), the ability to bind peptides derived from certain alloantigens is under genetic control. For example, the ability to form antibodies to the human platelet antigen-1a (HPA-1a) is strongly associated with the HLA-DRw3*0101 allele (Section 1.1.3).

Helper T cells express receptors which recognize peptides lodged in the HLA class II groove. It follows that processed peptides contain certain amino acids which contact the HLA class II molecule and a different set of amino acids which contact the T cell receptor. Thus, T cells recognize epitopes made up of linear amino acid sequences (in the HLA groove) rather than the conformational determinants which constitute the epitopes recognized by B cells and the antibodies they secrete. The interaction between antigen-presenting cells and helper T cells is facilitated by a series of cell adhesion and co-stimulatory molecules. Once an antigen has been appropriately presented, helper T cells become activated and secrete cytokines such as interleukin-2 which are necessary for T cells to divide. These in turn release interleukins which cause B cells to differentiate into antibody-secreting clones (Figure 1.1).

In previously primed individuals, B cells can also take up antigen and present it, in the context of HLA class II, to helper T cells. Importantly, antigens displayed on the surface of B cells reflect the repertoire of antigens that B cells can recognize and select via specific membrane-bound antibodies. This means that helper T cells activate those B cells which have bound the antigen responsible for the initial activation of helper T cells (Figure 1.1). Again, the interaction between B cells and

Figure 1.1 (cont.)

(b) Cytokines involved in helper T cell activation include interleukin-1 (IL-1), IL-6, IL-12, IL-15 and tumour necrosis factor α (TNFα). IL-2 is also important in T cell proliferation. Cytokines involved in antigen-presenting cell activation (leading to increased expression of HLA class II and other molecules) include interferon γ (IFNγ), granulocyte–macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), IL-4 and TNFβ.

(c) Co-stimulatory molecules on activated helper T cells bind to their ligands on B cells; CD28 binds to CD80/CD86, CD40 ligand binds to CD40, LFA-1 binds to ICAM-1 or ICAM-3 and CD2 binds to LFA-3.

(d) Cytokines involved in B cell activation and differentiation include IL-4 and IL-6, respectively; these are characteristic of helper T cells (TH2). Cytokines involved in the maintenance of T cell activation include IL-1 and IL-6.
helper T cells involves several different receptor–ligand interactions and an exchange of soluble interleukins; HLA class II/peptide complexes and CD40 receptor molecules on B cells are ligated by T cell receptors and CD40 ligand molecules on helper T cells. This signals antigen-specific B cells to proliferate and differentiate into antibody-secreting plasma cells and memory B cells. The latter are responsible for the anamnestic response to rechallenge with antigen. Finally, the antigen-driven process of affinity maturation results in hypermutation of B cells and the secretion of antibody with increased affinity for antigen. Concurrent with the immune response, various mechanisms ensure the regulation of antibody production.¹

1.1.2 The maternal alloimmune response to fetal red cells

Human red cells express hundreds of different blood group antigens most of which have been reported to elicit a maternal alloimmune response (Chapter 2). Clinically, the most important antigen is D (Section 2.5.1): the antigen is relatively immunogenic, it is well developed early in gestation, a significant proportion of the Caucasian population is D negative, and the antibody is capable of causing fetal haemolysis.

In vitro, the immune response to peptides representing D-specific sequences results in the generation of cytokines characteristic of a helper T cell-dependent response.² In vivo, a primary immune response is followed by an anamnestic long-lived secondary immune response associated with the presence of circulating lymphocytes expressing D-specific membrane immunoglobulin.³ Helper T cells from different D-negative individuals appear to recognize and respond only to a limited number of peptides derived from regions distributed throughout the intracellular, transmembrane and extracellular regions of the D protein.⁴

The likelihood of a D-negative woman becoming immunized depends on several factors and these are reviewed below.

1.1.2.1 Dose of D-positive fetal red cells

Small volumes of fetal red cells enter the maternal circulation during most normal pregnancies and after most normal deliveries (Section 6.4).⁵ In the absence of antenatal prophylaxis, anti-D may be detected in sera from less than 1% of D-negative women bearing D-positive fetuses by the end of the third trimester.⁶ This implies that, during normal pregnancy, transplacental haemorrhage of sufficient red cells to elicit antibody production is rare.⁷ The volume of transplacental haemorrhage detected in the maternal circulation may be significantly greater at delivery, especially when the fetus and mother are ABO compatible. Thus, in the absence of Rh prophylaxis, about 16% of D-negative women become immunized as a result of their first D-positive ABO-compatible pregnancy; about one-half have detectable
anti-D by 6 months after delivery and about one-half mount a brisk secondary response during a subsequent D-positive pregnancy indicating that a primary immunization had occurred. The incidence of alloimmunization increases to 31% following transplacental haemorrhage of over 0.1 ml fetal blood.

Transplacental haemorrhage and alloimmunization may follow invasive procedures such as amniocentesis, fetal blood sampling, elective and spontaneous pregnancy loss, and some obstetric manipulations. These events and their associated risks of alloimmunization are discussed in more detail (Section 6.4).

### 1.1.2.2 Rh phenotype of the fetal blood

Red cells with the phenotype R2r have been found to be more immunogenic than R1r cells. This may be related to the density of D antigens on these cells; R2r cells have 14000–16000 D antigens and R1r cells have 9900–14600 D antigens.

### 1.1.2.3 ABO incompatibility

The relative rarity with which women become alloimmunized to D when the partner is ABO incompatible was first noted by Levine in 1943. In later studies, it was estimated that blood group A incompatibility between mother and fetus conferred 90% protection against immunization to D; blood group B incompatibility conferred 55% protection. Presumably, the protective effect is due to the ability of anti-A or anti-B to cause rapid intravascular destruction of fetal red cells.

### 1.1.2.4 Maternal HLA haplotype

Hilden et al. found the HLA-DQB1 allele *0201 in 18% of women with anti-D titres between 16 and 256 and in 85% of women with titres above 512, suggesting an association between this allele and a predisposition to form relatively high levels of anti-D. However, the molecular mechanisms responsible for this association have not been elucidated.

### 1.1.2.5 Fetal gender

Several studies have reported evidence which suggests that D-positive male fetuses elicit an alloimmune response more frequently than female fetuses. The male to female ratio in three studies was 1.4:1, 1.5:1 and 1.7:1.

### 1.1.3 The maternal alloimmune response to fetal platelets

Five of the glycoprotein receptors expressed in the platelet membrane have been shown to be polymorphic in Caucasian populations and so capable of eliciting a maternal alloantibody response leading to thrombocytopenia in the fetus (Section 12.2). Most cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia are caused by maternal antibodies to the human platelet antigen-1a (HPA-1a). The HPA-1a antigen is caused
by the presence of a leucine residue (rather than proline) at position 33 on the β subunit of the fibrinogen receptor (also called glycoprotein IIb/IIIa or CD41/61).

In common with the alloimmune response to red cells, maternal anti-HPA antibodies are predominantly IgG1.20,21

The pathogenesis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia differs from that of HDFN in that maternal sensitization to fetal platelet antigens often occurs in a first pregnancy, indicating that platelet antigens may be more immunogenic than red cell antigens.22 For example, transplacental passage of fetal glycoprotein IIIa may occur as early as week 14 of gestation.23 Moreover, glycoprotein IIIa is found on syncytiotrophoblasts of the placental brush border.24 Although glycoprotein IIIa is a type I transmembrane protein, its release into the maternal circulation might occur as the cells undergo apoptosis, perhaps during invasion of the endometrium.

The immune response to HPA-1a is under genetic control. Although only 5–10% of HPA-1a-negative women with HPA-1a-positive fetuses produce anti-HPA-1a (Section 4.2.1), the presence of the HLA-DRB3*0101 allele increases the risk of alloimmunization by a factor of 140.25 Interestingly, the immune response to HPA-1b does not appear to be HLA restricted.26 This implies that antigen-presenting cells require HLA-DRB3*0101 to present HPA-1a-derived peptides and that leucine at position 33 is involved in peptide binding in the HLA class II groove. This has been substantiated using an in vitro peptide-binding assay to show that leucine does indeed anchor the peptide to the HLA-DRB3*0101 molecule.27 The proline form did not bind to the HLA-DRB3*0101 molecule which explains the rarity with which anti-HPA-1b antibodies are formed. The alloimmune response to another clinically important platelet antigen, HPA-5b, is also under genetic control.28

1.1.4 The maternal alloimmune response to fetal neutrophils

There is a paucity of data on the nature of the maternal immune response to fetal neutrophils. It is well established that immunization may occur in first pregnancies so presumably fetal neutrophils can enter the maternal circulation during normal gestation.29 The antibodies produced recognize granulocyte-specific antigens expressed on Fcγ receptor III (CD16), the complement receptor 3 (CD11b/CD18) and other, as yet unidentified, glycoproteins.30,31 Granulocyte antigens are fully expressed at birth and are discussed in detail later (Section 13.3.2).32

1.2 Transfer of IgG to the fetus

The second critical step in the pathogenesis of the alloimmune cytopenias is the active transfer of IgG alloantibodies from the mother to the fetus. All four sub-classes are actively transferred into the fetus via syncytiotrophoblast cells which
express receptors for the Fc domain of IgG. These receptors are termed FcRn (Fc receptor neonatal) because they were first demonstrated in neonatal rodents where they transport IgG across the gut. Transfer of IgG across the placenta is slow until around week 24 and so HDFN before this time is rare. The rate of transfer increases exponentially during the second half of gestation until term when IgG levels in the fetus (approximately 15 g/dl) tend to exceed those in the mother (approximately 13 g/dl). There is great variation between individual pregnancies. The rate of transport may be a major factor determining the severity of cytopenia in the fetus; in HDFN, it may be the rate-limiting step in the reaction between fetal red cells and maternal anti-D. There is some evidence that IgG1 is overrepresented in the fetal circulation early in gestation. Also, IgG with relatively high levels of galactose is relatively abundant in the fetal circulation. These forms of IgG may either be transported preferentially or catabolized relatively slowly in the fetus.

Recent studies have elucidated the molecular basis of IgG transport. The key to the process is the ability of FcRn to bind IgG with relatively high affinity at an acidic pH but with negligible affinity at the pH of blood (pH 7.4). The FcRn molecule consists of an α chain which is homologous to HLA class-I molecules associated with β-2-microglobulin. The first step in the process is the nonspecific fluid-phase pinocytosis of IgG (like other plasma proteins) by the syncytiotrophoblasts. The IgG is then trafficked to apical vesicles where the acid pH causes it to bind to FcRn lining the vesicles. FcRn recognizes certain amino acids (isoleucine 253, histidine 310, histidine 435) at the interface between the C_\(\text{H}_2\) and C_\(\text{H}_3\) domains of IgG. Each IgG molecule has two heavy chains and may, therefore, bind two FcRn molecules. In this way, IgG binding results in FcRn dimerization which appears to be crucial for IgG trafficking. Bound IgG is then transported across the cells within the vesicles which eventually fuse with the basal cell membrane. This exposes the vesicle contents to neutral pH causing the IgG to dissociate from the FcRn and enter the fetal circulation.

1.3 The immune destruction of blood cells in the fetus

There are very few studies on the action of red cell or platelet antibodies in the fetus. The processes involved in the immune destruction of red cells and platelets have therefore been inferred from observations made in adults and from in vitro experiments. As a result of these studies, it is generally accepted that IgG alloantibodies opsonise blood cells causing their recognition by macrophages which express receptors for the Fc portion of IgG (usually abbreviated FcγR, where γ denotes specificity of the receptor [R] for IgG). Sensitized blood cells may then be destroyed by macrophages via a process termed extravascular lysis.
1.3.1 IgG and Fcγ receptors

The structure and function of IgG has been reviewed extensively and will be discussed only briefly here. IgG molecules are symmetrical, with two identical Fab fragments joined to one Fc fragment via a hinge region. The Fc fragment is comprised of two C\(_h\)2 domains and two C\(_h\)3 domains. Critical amino acid residues within the Fc region are responsible for interactions with Fcγ receptors on effector cells such as monocytes and macrophages. Four subclasses of IgG have been identified (IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 and IgG4). The subclasses show significant differences in the hinge region length which comprises of 5, 12, 62 and 12 amino acids in IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 and IgG4, respectively. The structure of the hinge region affects the flexibility of IgG. This flexibility, together with other subclass-related differences in amino acids at key positions within the Fc region, determines the relative ability of the IgG subclasses to interact with Fcγ receptors.

Effector cells such as monocytes and macrophages express different receptors for the Fc region of IgG. The structure and function of different Fcγ receptors have been reviewed in detail elsewhere. Macrophages express three classes of receptor for the Fc portion of IgG (Fcγ receptor I, Fcγ receptor IIa and Fcγ receptor IIIa). Fcγ receptor I binds human IgG with high affinity. Fcγ receptor IIa has low affinity for human IgG1 and IgG3. Fcγ receptor IIIa has an ‘intermediate’ affinity for IgG. The function of these Fcγ receptors in relation to red cell and platelet destruction is considered in more detail below.

1.3.2 The immune destruction of fetal red cells

Despite a wealth of in vitro data, it is unclear which of the Fcγ receptors are involved in the immune destruction of sensitized cells. In vitro, in the absence of fluid-phase IgG, Fcγ receptor I mediates the interaction between monocytes or macrophages and IgG anti-D-sensitized red cells. However, a role for Fcγ receptor I in vivo seems unlikely because interactions between anti-D-sensitized red cells and this high affinity receptor are blocked by IgG concentrations several orders of magnitude lower than those found in plasma. Fcγ receptor IIa has a very low affinity for human IgG1 and IgG3. Fcγ receptor IIIa has an ‘intermediate’ affinity for IgG. The function of these Fcγ receptors in relation to red cell and platelet destruction is considered in more detail below.

There is indirect evidence that Fcγ receptor IIIa might play a role in the recognition of IgG-sensitized red cells in vivo. The administration of monoclonal antibodies to Fcγ receptor III increased the lifespan of IgG-sensitized red cells in chimpanzees and caused an increase in the number of circulating platelets in patients with autoimmune thrombocytopenia. The adherence of anti-D-sensitized red cells to adult splenic macrophages in cryostat sections is mediated, at least in part, by Fcγ receptor IIIa.

Although the molecular basis for the in utero destruction of IgG-sensitized red cells...
cells remains to be fully elucidated, there is evidence to suggest that several factors may influence the extent of red cell destruction and, hence, disease severity. These are shown diagrammatically in Figure 1.2 and are considered below.

### 1.3.2.1 IgG glycosylation

IgG molecules contain a carbohydrate moiety within the C_{H2} domains. The carbohydrate helps to stabilize the tertiary structure of the molecule and is required for IgG to bind to Fcγ receptors. The carbohydrate is heterogeneous and IgG from different individuals may contain different amounts of galactose. In vitro, the amount of incorporated galactose may affect antibody function. For example, monoclonal anti-D secreted under conditions which favour the incorporation of relatively high levels of galactose is more efficient at promoting lymphocyte-mediated lysis of red cells. The relevance of these observations to the pathogenesis of HDFN is not yet established. Nevertheless, IgG galactose levels increase during pregnancy and it has been shown that anti-D in sera from pregnant women promotes lymphocyte-mediated haemolysis with greater efficiency than anti-D in sera from males.50,51

### 1.3.2.2 IgG subclass

Sera from approximately one-third of women with anti-D contain only IgG1 anti-D while sera from most of the remainder contain a mixture of IgG1 and IgG3 anti-D.52 In vitro experiments using human monoclonal anti-D have shown that the
phagocytosis and lysis of red cells by monocytes are promoted with greater efficiency by IgG3 anti-D than by IgG1 anti-D.\textsuperscript{45} The longer hinge region of IgG3 may confer to the molecule the ability to span the gap between negatively charged red cells and monocytes with greater efficiency than IgG1. Although an association between IgG subclass and the extent of haemolysis in utero might be expected, studies using predominantly serological techniques have generated conflicting results. Some studies have failed to demonstrate any relationship,\textsuperscript{53–55} while others have reported an association between severe HDFN and IgG1 anti-D alone \textsuperscript{56,57} or the presence of both IgG1 and IgG3.\textsuperscript{52,58} The application of quantitative techniques should resolve these inconsistent results.

1.3.2.3 Antibody concentration
Once immunized, the concentration of antibodies in the mother influences the severity of haemolysis in the fetus; the concentration of anti-D in the fetal circulation reflects the concentration of anti-D in the maternal circulation.\textsuperscript{59} The extent to which the antibody level determines disease severity and the ability of different assays to measure antibody concentration are considered in detail elsewhere (Section 8.3).

1.3.2.4 Antibody specificity
IgG antibodies to most red cell antigens have been reported to cause HDFN. The relationship between antibody specificity and clinical significance is reviewed in Chapter 2. However, it is possible to establish criteria which govern the potential of blood group antibodies to cause haemolysis in utero and these will be discussed briefly here. First, antibodies with the potential to cause haemolysis in utero recognize antigens which are restricted to the erythroid lineage; antibodies to antigens with a wider tissue distribution are absorbed by other fetal tissues and hence fail to localize on fetal red cells. The maturational specificity of blood group antigens may also affect the pathogenesis of HDFN. Thus, antibodies to antigens of the Kell system, which are expressed at an early stage of erythroid development, may cause anaemia by suppressing erythropoiesis or by promoting the immune destruction of erythroid precursor cells.\textsuperscript{60,61} The second criterion is antigen density. Some antigens (for example, Rh antigens) are well expressed early in embryonic development. Other antigens (for example, Lutheran antigens) are poorly expressed on fetal cells. Antibodies to antigens which are expressed at low density on fetal red cells are unlikely to cause HDFN.\textsuperscript{62} A third criterion may be antigen structure. As a general rule, antibodies to antigens which are relatively distant from the lipid bilayer more efficiently promote the recognition of red cells by monocytes.\textsuperscript{63} Thus, IgG anti-K is more effective at promoting the adherence, phagocytosis and lysis of red cells than IgG anti-D.\textsuperscript{54} IgG2 anti-A promotes Fcγ receptor IIa-mediated rec-

AG Hadley, C Turner
ognition of red cells by monocytes whereas IgG2 anti-D does not. However, the implications of these in vitro observations for the pathogenesis of HDFN remain to be elucidated.

### 1.3.2.5 Antigen density

There is evidence that the density of blood group antigens on fetal red cells may affect the severity of haemolysis. Thus, a D<sup>u</sup>-positive fetus (with relatively few D antigens) may have mild HDFN despite the presence of high concentrations of anti-D in the maternal circulation. Moreover, the severity of HDFN due to anti-A or anti-B is partly determined by the number of A or B antigens on the fetal red cells.

### 1.3.2.6 Function of the fetal spleen

Extravascular haemolysis requires a competent system of phagocytic cells in the fetus. These cells develop at an early gestational age and the presence of macrophages has been demonstrated at 13 weeks’ gestation. There are few data on the functional activity of splenic macrophages in the fetus although expression of Fcγ receptors by fetal and neonatal (cord) monocytes is slightly lower than in the adult. Nevertheless, fetal macrophages are probably competent to destroy IgG-sensitized red cells by 22–24 weeks’ gestation when significant levels of IgG are transported across the placenta.

### 1.3.2.7 FcγR polymorphisms

Genes encoding several of the Fcγ receptors are polymorphic and these may affect the ability of the receptors to bind IgG. Intuitively then, one might expect these polymorphisms to affect the severity of haemolysis. Seventy per cent of Caucasians express an allotype of Fcγ receptor IIa with an arginine at amino acid position 131 (termed FcγRIIa-R131) rather than a histidine (termed FcγRIIa-H131) and the latter allotype has a relatively high affinity for human IgG2. This might be expected to have implications in the pathogenesis of HDFN due to ABO antibodies which are predominantly IgG2. Indeed, in a relatively small cohort of patients, the Fcγ receptor IIa-H131 allotype was overexpressed in infants with ABO HDFN. This observation awaits further confirmation.

The gene encoding Fcγ receptor IIIa has several polymorphisms. One polymorphism results in the presence of either valine or phenylalanine at amino acid position 158. The gene frequencies are 0.43 and 0.57, respectively. Natural killer cells from individuals who are homozygous for the valine polymorphism bind more monomeric IgG than natural killer cells from individuals who are homozygous for the phenylalanine polymorphism. However, the degree to which this polymorphism influences clinical outcome in HDFN is unknown.
1.3.2.8 Inhibitory antibodies
Occasionally, women with very high levels of anti-D deliver infants with unexpectedly mild HDFN. Sera from the majority of such women contain anti-HLA antibodies which inhibit the interaction between monocytes and anti-D-sensitized red cells.\textsuperscript{74,75} It has been proposed that these monocyte-reactive antibodies may cross the placenta and inhibit the destruction of fetal cells by blocking FcγR function on fetal macrophages. The mechanism of inhibition appears to involve the formation of antigen–antibody–FcγR complexes on the macrophage membrane resulting in receptor blockade and inhibition of phagocytosis.\textsuperscript{76,77}

1.3.2.9 Fetal gender
Studies into the association between fetal gender and the severity of HDFN have produced conflicting data. Ulm et al. reported that male fetuses were 13 times more likely to develop hydrops than female fetuses, and perinatal mortality was three times higher in male fetuses.\textsuperscript{78} In contrast, Ramsey and Sherman did not find that male fetuses were more likely to have severe anaemia.\textsuperscript{79}

1.3.3 The immune destruction of fetal platelets
The cellular interactions involved in the alloimmune destruction of platelets in the fetus are less well studied than those involved in red cell destruction. However, studies into autoimmune thrombocytopenia in adults suggest that the mechanism of platelet destruction is analogous to that of red cell destruction in HDFN.

1.3.3.1 Mechanism of antibody-mediated platelet destruction
Early studies showed that autoimmune thrombocytopenia involves the splenic sequestration of platelets in a manner analogous to the extravascular destruction of IgG-sensitized red cells.\textsuperscript{80} This suggests that the fetal spleen may be the primary site of platelet destruction in alloimmune thrombocytopenia. There are few data on the effector cells responsible for platelet destruction although peripheral blood monocytes have been shown to respond IgG-sensitized platelets in vitro.\textsuperscript{81,82} Data on the role of Fcγ receptors come from both in vivo and in vitro studies. Clarkson et al. showed that administration of a monoclonal antibody to Fcγ receptor III to a patient with autoimmune thrombocytopenia was associated with a rise in platelet count.\textsuperscript{47} Studies in transgenic mice have implicated Fcγ receptor IIA in the immune destruction of platelets sensitized with rat IgG2a antiplatelet antibody.\textsuperscript{83} However, the extent to which this model reflects platelet destruction in alloimmune thrombocytopenia remains to be established; human IgG1 has a lower affinity for Fcγ receptor IIa than rat IgG2a.

The recognition of sensitized platelets by macrophages probably involves
numerous different molecular interactions in that both platelets and macrophages express molecules which mediate their adhesion.\textsuperscript{84,85} The initial mediator of this association is P-selectin (CD62P) which is expressed in increased amounts on platelets after activation.\textsuperscript{86,87} Ligation of P-selectin by P-selectin glycoprotein ligand-1 on leukocytes results in platelet/leukocyte adhesion.\textsuperscript{88} This ‘tethering’ allows secondary, integrin-mediated adhesion to occur. P-selectin also promotes the secretion by leukocytes of inflammatory cytokines which may, in turn, increase the expression of Fcγ receptors and other adhesion molecules.\textsuperscript{89–91}

A role for complement as a mediator of thrombocytopenia has been suggested by experiments using sera containing anti-HPA-1a from patients with posttransfusion purpura. At high concentrations, these antibodies may bind C1q and activate the classical complement cascade resulting in lysis. However, at lower concentrations, they may activate platelets causing the release of serotonin from platelet α granules.\textsuperscript{92,93} Increased platelet-bound C3 has also been observed in patients with autoimmune thrombocytopenia.\textsuperscript{94} Complement might, therefore, participate in platelet destruction in alloimmune thrombocytopenia by causing cell lysis or by enhancing the recognition of platelets by splenic macrophages via the deposition of C3 fragments or the expression of cell adhesion molecules. However, studies in complement-deficient mice have also shown that thrombocytopenia can develop in the absence of complement proteins.\textsuperscript{83} Further studies are required to elucidate the relative importance of these processes in platelet destruction.

In addition to causing the immune destruction of platelets, anti-HPA-1a antibodies from some cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia are able to inhibit fibrinogen binding to glycoprotein IIb/IIIa; the HPA-1a polymorphism is located near to the ‘RGD-binding region’ of glycoprotein IIb/IIIa.\textsuperscript{95} However, the ability of sera from patients with alloimmune thrombocytopenia to inhibit fibrinogen binding is probably exceptional and is unlikely to be a major risk factor for fetal haemorrhage.\textsuperscript{96}

1.3.3.2 Antigen density

The severity of thrombocytopenia may be dependent on antigen density in a manner analogous to red cell destruction. The glycoprotein most densely represented on the platelet membrane is glycoprotein IIb/IIIa, each allelic form being present at approximately 40000 copies per platelet in a heterozygote (Section 12.2.1).\textsuperscript{22} Antibodies to antigens expressed on glycoprotein IIb/IIIa, such as HPA-1a, HPA-1b and HPA-3b, have all been associated with severe thrombocytopenia. In contrast, severe thrombocytopenia leading to intracerebral haemorrhage due to anti-HPA-5b is less common and this antigen is expressed in glycoprotein Ia/IIb, which is present at approximately 1500 copies per platelet.\textsuperscript{22}
1.3.4 The immune destruction of fetal neutrophils

Several indirect lines of evidence suggest that neutrophil destruction is mediated by macrophages in the fetal spleen; macrophages containing ingested neutrophils have been isolated from the spleens of patients with autoimmune neutropenia and $^{111}$In-labelled neutrophils are sequestered in the spleens of patients with circulating antineutrophil antibodies.97,98 In vitro, neutrophils sensitized with antibodies from women whose infants had alloimmune neutropenia elicit an Fcγ receptor I-mediated metabolic response from human monocytes.99

1.4 Conclusions

The alloimmune cytopenias are complex disorders in which the pathophysiology remains to be fully characterized. This is due in part to the inherent difficulty in studying disease processes in the fetus. Nevertheless, future diagnostic and therapeutic advances depend on an improved understanding of the molecular basis of the maternal alloimmune response and the processes involved in the immune destruction of blood cells in the fetus. Progress in these areas should lead to the development of new strategies to modulate maternal immune responses and specifically suppress the destruction of fetal cells. Transgenic animal technology may provide one important means of establishing improved models with which to study these processes and evaluate the potential of new therapies.

1.5 References

3 Elson CJ & Bradley J (1971). The immunocytoadherence of Rh(D) positive erythrocytes to mononucleated cells from the peripheral blood of Rhesus isoimmunised individuals. *International Archives of Allergy and Applied Immunology*, 40, 382–97.
14 Rochna E & Hughes-Jones NC (1965). The use of purified 125I-labelled anti-γ globulin in the determination of the number of D antigen sites on red cells of different phenotypes. *Vox Sanguinis*, 10, 675–86.
26 Kuijpers RWAM, von dem Borne AEG, Kiefel V et al. (1992). Leucine$^{33}$-proline$^{33}$ substitution in human platelet glycoprotein IIIa determines HLA-DR52a (Dw24) association of the immune response against HPA-1a (Zwa/PlA1) and HPA-1b (Zwb/PlA2). *Human Immunology*, 34, 253–356.


40 Ghetie V & Ward ES (1997). FcRn, the MHC class I-related receptor that is more than an IgG transporter. *Immuno- nology Today*, 18, 592–8.


Pathophysiology of the alloimmune cytopenias


61 Daniels GL, Hadley AG & Green CA (1999). Fetal anaemia due to anti-K may result from immune destruction of early erythroid progenitors. *Transfusion Medicine, 9* (suppl 1), 16.


75 Shepard SL, Noble AL, Filbey D & Hadley AG (1996). Inhibition of the monocyte chemi-
luminescent response to anti-D sensitized red cells by Fcγ receptor I-blocking antibodies which ameliorate the severity of haemolytic disease of the newborn. *Vox Sanguinis*, 70, 157–63.


Blood group antibodies in haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn

Geoff Daniels
Bristol Institute for Transfusion Sciences, Bristol, UK

2.1 Introduction

Human blood groups were discovered in 1900, but the first suspicion that a woman might be immunized by alloantigens on the red cells of her fetus did not appear until 1939, with the discovery of the Rh D antigen. In 1941, Levine et al. showed that blood groups were responsible for a disease associated with stillbirth, hydrops, jaundice and kernicterus. That disease was named erythroblastosis fetalis, although a more appropriate title is haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn (HDFN).

HDFN is caused by the immune destruction of fetal red cells or their progenitors, facilitated by maternal antibodies. In order for the mother to produce an alloantibody, her red cells must lack the culpable antigen, which the fetus must have inherited from its father. Red cell antigen polymorphism, therefore, is at the root of HDFN. Over 250 well-established blood group specificities have been identified, but only a minority of these have been implicated in clinically severe HDFN.

The severity of HDFN varies enormously. At its most extreme, it culminates in fetal or neonatal death, yet in many publications antibodies have been reported to have caused HDFN when the indications have been no more than a positive direct antiglobulin test result with fetal red cells. In this chapter, HDFN will generally only be considered to have occurred when clinical intervention in excess of phototherapy for jaundice, such as intrauterine or neonatal transfusion, was indicated, or when kernicterus or hydrops was reported. Multifarious red cell antigens will be mentioned in this chapter and it is not possible to refer to the original publications describing all of them. The appropriate references can be found in Daniels and Issitt and Anstee.

2.2 Blood group terminology

During the course of the 20th century, several hundred red cell antigens have been identified. The extended time period over which these antigens were discovered has
led to a variety of different terminology styles being introduced. In some cases, single capital letters were used; for example, in the ABO system, the letters A and B represent the two main antigens (and the phenotypes in which only those antigens are present) and O is used for the phenotype resulting from homozygosity of a third allele (O), which produces neither A nor B. Another approach has been to use a capital letter to represent one antigen and the same letter, in lower case, to represent its allelic antigen (e.g. K and k of the Kell system, S and s of the MNS system). This could be confusing because it implies a dominant–recessive genetic relationship where none exists. Superscripts following a symbol of two letters have also been used to distinguish allelic antigens – for example, Fya and Fyb, as well as Jka and Jkb. With the discovery of further members of some systems, numerical notations were introduced. In the Lutheran system, for example, one pair of allelic antigens is generally called Luα and Luβ, two other pairs are Luα6 and Luβ9, and Luα8 and Luβ14, and a fourth pair, whose names were established before they were known to belong to the Lutheran system, is Auα and Auβ. To make matters worse, some antigens were given different names in different laboratories, based on alternative genetic theories – for example D and Rh₀ in the Rh system.

The International Society of Blood Transfusion established an internationally agreed numerical terminology for blood group antigens in which most antigens have been assigned to one of 25 blood group systems (Table 2.1). A blood group system consists of one or more antigens controlled by a single gene locus or by a complex of two or more very closely linked homologous genes with virtually no recombination occurring between them. Therefore, each blood group system is genetically discrete from every other system. Some systems consist of only one blood group specificity, but Rh, which is the largest, contains 45 (Table 2.1). Each system has a symbol of between one and four upper case letters (e.g. KEL) and a three-digit number (e.g. 006), and each antigen within the system also has a three-digit number. Thus, every antigen has a unique six-digit number. For example, the third antigen of the Kell system, Kpα, has the number 006003 and the more commonly used alphanumerical symbol, KEL3. Finally, phenotypes are written in the format KEL:−1,2,−3,4 (where minus before the number represents absence of the antigen). Genes are written in the format KEL 3 and genotypes are written in the format KEL 1,2/−1,2.

Insufficient genetic information makes it currently impossible for some blood group antigens to be allocated either to a system or to cause the establishment of a new system. Some of these have been placed into sets of biochemically or serologically related antigens called collections. For example, two antigens with an apparent allelic relationship, Csα and Csβ, have not been shown to be genetically independent of all the existing blood group systems. They cannot, therefore, form a new system and so are termed COST1 (205001) and COST2 (205002) of the Cost
(205) collection. In addition, there is a series of low frequency antigens, which have 700 as their first three digits (e.g. By is 700002), and a series of high frequency antigens, with 901 as their first three digits (e.g. Vel is 901001).

Many people working with blood groups prefer to use a more traditional and familiar notation. For example, nobody requests ABO:11100211, 1100211, 1100231 blood when they want group O. The International Society of Blood Transfusion does not discourage the use of traditional symbols, but recommends that only those symbols listed in the International Society of Blood Transfusion publications be used. For example, D antigen of the Rh system should be called RH1 or D, but not rhesus, and K antigen of the Kell system should be called KEL1 or K, but not Kell or K1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antigen no.</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>No. of antigens</th>
<th>Antibodies responsible for HDFN?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>001</td>
<td>ABO</td>
<td>ABO</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Yes, usually mild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>002</td>
<td>MNS</td>
<td>MNS</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>Yes, sometimes severe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>003</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>004</td>
<td>Rh</td>
<td>RH</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>Yes, often severe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005</td>
<td>Lutheran</td>
<td>LU</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>006</td>
<td>Kell</td>
<td>KEL</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Yes, often severe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007</td>
<td>Lewis</td>
<td>LE</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008</td>
<td>Duffy</td>
<td>FY</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Yes, occasionally severe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>009</td>
<td>Kidd</td>
<td>JK</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Very rarely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>Diego</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Yes, often severe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011</td>
<td>Yt</td>
<td>YT</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012</td>
<td>Xg</td>
<td>XG</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>013</td>
<td>Scianna</td>
<td>SC</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>014</td>
<td>Dombrock</td>
<td>DO</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>015</td>
<td>Colton</td>
<td>CO</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Yes, severe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>016</td>
<td>Landsteiner–Wiener</td>
<td>LW</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>017</td>
<td>Chido/Rodgers</td>
<td>CH/RG</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>018</td>
<td>Hh</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>019</td>
<td>Kx</td>
<td>XK</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Only found in males</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020</td>
<td>Gerbich</td>
<td>GE</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>021</td>
<td>Cromer</td>
<td>CROM</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>022</td>
<td>Knops</td>
<td>KN</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>023</td>
<td>Indian</td>
<td>IN</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>024</td>
<td>Ok</td>
<td>OK</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No (potential not known)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>025</td>
<td>Raph</td>
<td>RAPH</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No (potential not known)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Blood groups are inherited characters. Antigen expression is usually inherited as a dominant character, whereas an antigen-negative phenotype is inherited as a recessive character. If a woman has produced an alloantibody with the potential to cause HDFN, she must have antigen-negative red cells. This usually occurs because she is homozygous either for an allele that does not produce the antigen or for a deletion of that gene. HDFN may result when a fetus inherits the gene encoding the pertinent blood group antigen from its father. If the father is homozygous for the gene encoding the antigen, then the fetus will be antigen positive, but, if he is heterozygous, there is an even chance that the fetus will be antigen positive. If the father is antigen negative, then the fetus will be antigen negative and not at risk of HDFN (Figure 2.1). This apparently simple situation may be complicated by alleles producing a weak expression of the antigen. For example, if the mother is Rh D negative and has made anti-D, and if the father is heterozygous for a normal RHD gene and for RHD that produces weak D (D^w), the father’s red cells will express normal D antigen, but one-half of his children will have weak D and so be at much reduced risk from HDFN (Figure 2.1).

Anti-Kx is a haemolytic antibody that can be responsible for haemolytic transfusion reactions, but which is unlikely to cause HDFN because of the mode of inheritance of the Kx antigen. Kx is an antigen of high frequency encoded by a gene on the short arm of the X chromosome. Consequently, the rare Kx-negative phenotype almost always occurs as a result of hemizygosity in males for a mutation of the Kx gene on their single X chromosome. Although the Kx-negative phenotype could occur in a female due to homozygosity for the mutation, this would be exceedingly rare.

Most blood group polymorphisms are the result of one or more nucleotide changes encoding amino acid substitutions in an extracellular domain of a red cell surface protein. In null phenotypes, the whole protein is absent from the membrane, usually as a result of a gene deletion or an inactivating mutation. When immunized, women with null phenotypes may make antibodies to a variety of epitopes on the blood group protein and these antibodies often have the ability to cause HDFN.

Carbohydrate antigens, such as those of the ABO system, provide a further complexity to the genetics of red cell surface antigens. Carbohydrate antigens are not encoded directly by the blood group genes that control their expression. Synthesis of oligosaccharide chains is regulated by transferase enzymes, which catalyse the transfer of monosaccharide residues from a nucleotide donor substrate to an acceptor substrate. These transferase enzymes are encoded by the gene that governs antigen expression.
Numerous factors determine whether red cell alloantibodies have the potential to cause HDFN (Section 1.3.2). One important aspect is that the characteristics of particular antigens can determine whether their corresponding antibodies cause HDFN.

Different antigens have very different numbers of molecules on the red cell membrane. Antigens of the ABO and H systems, carbohydrate determinants present on a variety of glycoproteins and glycolipids, are the most abundant, with up to $2 \times 10^6$ copies per cell. There are about $10^6$ molecules per cell of band 3 (anion exchanger 1), carrying the Diego-system antigens, and of glycophorin A, carrying the MN antigens. The number of antigen sites per cell is substantially less for the
other blood groups with $1-2 \times 10^5$ Rh antigen sites and $0.5-2 \times 10^3$ Kell antigen sites per cell.\(^7\) The number of antigens per red cell may be important in influencing whether the antigen is likely to be involved in HDFN, but other factors are more important: ABO, MN and Diego antigens are rarely involved in severe HDFN, whereas the less abundant D and K antigens frequently are.

Some antigens are abundant on the red cells of adults but are present in lower quantity or absent on fetal red cells. One good example is a histo-blood group antigen, I, which is expressed on the internal structure of branched oligosaccharides of red cell glycoproteins and glycolipids. The enzyme responsible for the branching of the oligosaccharides is apparently not active in fetuses and young infants and only linear oligosaccharides are present on their red cells. Occasionally, adults have a rare phenotype in which their red cells lack I and these individuals produce anti-I. Alloanti-I is occasionally active at 37°C and haemolytic, but cannot cause HDFN due to absence of the corresponding antigen on fetal red cells. Also, reduced antigenic expression on fetal red cells, compared with adult cells, may be one factor responsible for the rare occurrence of severe HDFN caused by ABO antibodies. Other red cell antigens that have substantially reduced expression on fetal red cells compared with those of adults are P1, Lewis, Lutheran, Yt\(^a\), Xg\(^b\), Vel and JMH, and none of these has been involved in severe HDFN.

Many blood group antigens are also present on blood cells other than red cells and in tissues other than blood. This is particularly true of the ubiquitous ABO and H antigens, often called histo-blood group antigens. A and B antigens may also be present on soluble glycoproteins in body fluids. It is likely that any maternal antibody to a histo-blood group antigen crossing the placenta will bind to antigen at numerous locations on the fetus, significantly diluting any haemolytic effect. Similarly, antigens of the Cromer and Lutheran blood group systems are present on placental trophoblast epithelial cells derived from the fetus.\(^8,9\) It is likely that the corresponding antibodies, despite being IgG (predominantly IgG1), are unable to traverse the placenta as they become absorbed by the placenta. Consequently, Lutheran antibodies may appear clinically significant in laboratory functional assays, but do not cause HDFN.\(^10\) Babies of mothers with high-titre antibodies to the high frequency Lutheran antigens Lu\(^b\) and Lu\(^6\) had the corresponding antigens on their red cells, yet showed no sign of HDFN. Their red cells gave a negative direct antiglobulin test (Section 3.3.1) and no Lutheran antibody was detected in their neonatal sera, suggesting that, despite these antibodies being IgG1, they were unable to cross the placenta.\(^11\) Antigens of the Cromer blood group system are located on a complement-regulatory glycoprotein present on placental trophoblasts (CD55; decay-accelerating factor).\(^9\) Strongly reactive antibodies to Cromer system antigens (Cr\(^a\), Dr\(^a\), WES\(^b\)) have become undetectable in the maternal plasma during the second and third trimesters of pregnancy, only to reappear shortly after
parturition. This phenomenon may result from adsorption of maternal antibodies by the fetally derived placental cells.

Antibodies and antigens of the ABO system are occasionally responsible for HDFN (Section 2.6.1), but incompatibility between fetal A or B antigens and maternal ABO antibodies may also provide some protection against sensitization to the D antigen. The prevalence of anti-D HDFN is reduced where such ABO incompatibility occurs, presumably because enhanced clearance of ABO incompatible D-positive fetal red cells from the maternal blood reduces the frequency of anti-D immunization.

Antigen frequency within a population may also affect the opportunity for an antibody to cause HDFN. If an antigen is rare, it will be an extremely uncommon cause of HDFN, regardless of the haemolytic potential of its corresponding antibody. It is important to remember that absence of any published case of HDFN does not mean that antibodies of a particular rare specificity are incapable of causing HDFN.

2.5 Antibodies that most commonly cause moderate or severe HDFN

2.5.1 Anti-D

Despite the introduction of immunoprophylaxis programmes (Section 6.2) anti-D remains the most common cause of HDFN (Section 6.1.4) in Caucasian populations. Between 12% and 18% of European and North American Caucasian women are D negative, but the incidence of the D-negative phenotype is substantially lower in most other populations. In Africans, 2–5% are D-negative. In Chinese, Japanese and South-East Asians, the D-negative phenotype is rare, often with an incidence of less than three per 1000. A substantial proportion of these women are not truly D negative, but are reported to have very weak D expression (D<sub>e</sub>) and do not make anti-D. Many reviews discussing D frequencies, HDFN due to anti-D and the molecular genetics of Rh address only people of European origin, grossly distorting the world picture.

Antigens of the Rh system are encoded by two closely linked homologous genes, one encoding the D antigen (RHD) and the other encoding the CcEe antigens (RHCE) (Section 7.3.1). Each gene has a similar genomic organization, consisting of 10 exons of coding sequence. Hydropathy analysis, supported by immunochemical evidence, predicts that the Rh polypeptides cross the red cell membrane 12 times and have internal N- and C-termini (Figure 2.2). This model provides six extracellular domains which are the putative sites for antibody binding. The extracellular domains consist of between 7 and 22 amino acid residues, with a total of about 80 residues outside the membrane. A maximum of only 10 of these extracellular amino acids differ between the D and CcEe proteins. The Rh proteins are not
Glycosylated but are closely associated in the membrane with a glycoprotein, referred to as the Rh-associated glycoprotein, and are probably part of a larger complex of proteins and glycoproteins.\textsuperscript{18,19}

The D-negative phenotype results from the absence of the RhD protein from the red cell. In people of European origin, this usually arises from homozygosity for a deletion of the \textit{RHD} gene.\textsuperscript{20} In Africans, it usually results from homozygosity for an inactive D gene, the \textit{RHD} pseudogene (\textit{RHD} \textit{ψ}).\textsuperscript{21} The total absence of the RhD protein in the D-negative phenotype explains why no antigen antithetical to D (i.e. ‘d’) has been found and why D is so immunogenic. The immune system of a D-negative person encountering D-positive red cells is presented with numerous D epitopes on the extracellular regions of the D protein, as opposed to the single amino acid substitution usually associated with a blood group polymorphism.

Although the D-positive/D-negative polymorphism is relatively straightforward, there are numerous complexities involving D antigen expression. In the weak D phenotype (previously called D\textsuperscript{w}), all epitopes of D are expressed weakly and these individuals do not produce anti-D when transfused with red cells with normal D expression. Weak D red cells are less likely than normal D cells to be responsible for anti-D production and fetuses with weak D are less likely to be severely affected with HDFN.\textsuperscript{22} At least some examples of weak D antigens appear to result from amino acid substitutions in the membrane-spanning or intracellular regions of the D protein.\textsuperscript{23}

Partial D phenotypes are D-positive phenotypes in which a few or many epitopes of D are not expressed. This loss of epitopes may be due to amino acid substitutions in extracellular domains of the D protein or to the product of hybrid \textit{RHD} genes, in which a segment of the gene is replaced by the homologous segment derived from \textit{RHCE}. When immunized with D-positive red cells, individuals with partial D phenotypes are capable of producing antibodies to those D epitopes absent from their own red cells. Testing of partial D red cells with a profusion of

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{topology.png}
\caption{Diagrammatic representation of the topology of the RhD and RhCcEe polypeptides in the red cell membrane, showing the 12 membrane-spanning domains, six extracellular loops, and cytoplasmic termini. The RhD polypeptide is absent in D– phenotypes, so D epitopes may be located on any of the extracellular loops. The C/c and E/e polymorphisms represent amino acid substitutions in the second and fourth extracellular loops of the RhCcEe polypeptide, respectively.}
\end{figure}
human monoclonal anti-D has led to the recognition of numerous reaction patterns, often referred to as epitopes. The most recent publication\textsuperscript{24} catalogued 37 D epitopes, although the final figure will undoubtedly be higher than this. Over 20 different partial D antigens have been described (Table 2.2), but mostly they are rare. The most common in Caucasians are D\textsuperscript{VI} and D\textsuperscript{VII} and the most common in people of African origin is probably D\textsuperscript{III}\textsuperscript{19,25,26}.

Anti-D, when it occurs in women with a partial D antigen, can be responsible for severe HDFN in D-positive fetuses.\textsuperscript{5} Adsorption tests have shown that a substantial portion of the anti-D in immunoglobulin preparations does not bind to partial D red cells. It has been asserted that anti-D immunoglobulin should be given to partial D mothers because the anti-D constituent that does not bind to the mother’s

**Table 2.2** Partial D phenotypes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Partial D</th>
<th>LFAs*</th>
<th>Anti-D**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D\textsuperscript{II}</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D\textsuperscript{IIIa}</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D\textsuperscript{IIIb}</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D\textsuperscript{IIIc}</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D\textsuperscript{IVa}</td>
<td>Go\textsuperscript{a}</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D\textsuperscript{IVb}</td>
<td>Evans</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D\textsuperscript{Va}</td>
<td>D\textsuperscript{w}</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D\textsuperscript{Vb}</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D\textsuperscript{VI}</td>
<td>BARC</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D\textsuperscript{VII}</td>
<td>Tar</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFR</td>
<td>FPTT</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBT</td>
<td>Rh\textsuperscript{32}</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D\textsuperscript{Iar}</td>
<td>Rh\textsuperscript{33}, FPTT</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHMi</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHMii</td>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNU</td>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHR</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMH</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCS</td>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFW</td>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNB</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAR</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOL</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
* Associated low frequency antigens
** Anti-D present in any individual with this phenotype
own cells should be effective in suppressing immunization by the normal D antigen on fetal red cells.\textsuperscript{27} This is particularly important in D\textsuperscript{VI} mothers, whose red cells lack most D epitopes.

There is little information on the immunogenicity of partial D. A fetus with partial D antigen (D\textsuperscript{Va}) stimulated production of anti-D in a D-negative woman as a result of her first pregnancy and this resulted in mild HDFN in her second baby, though the baby also appeared to have the partial D antigen.\textsuperscript{28} The mother had received anti-D immunoglobulin after her first pregnancy.

\subsection*{2.5.2 Other antibodies to Rh-system antigens}

Rh is the most complex of the human blood group systems, consisting of 45 well-defined antigens. From the phenotyping point of view, the antigens usually considered are D, C, c, E and e.\textsuperscript{5} The CcEe determinants, which are located on a separate protein from D, are encoded by RHCE, a gene highly homologous to RHD. The D and CcEe proteins both consist of 417 amino acids and differ by about 32 residues. The C/c polymorphism is associated with up to four amino acid substitutions, but the defining substitution is in the second extracellular loop with serine at position 103 in C and proline at position 103 in c. The E/e polymorphism results from proline at position 226 in E and alanine in e, in the fourth extracellular loop. Rh epitopes are not, however, linear sequences of amino acids, but also depend on the conformation of the molecule in the membrane. In some cases, the epitopes may be discontinuous, involving interactions between amino acid sequences on more than one extracellular loop. Amino acid substitutions in the membrane-spanning domains of the proteins may affect expression of the CcEe antigens and may even create new specificities.\textsuperscript{19}

All antibodies to Rh-system antigens should be considered capable of causing severe HDFN, but the only Rh antibody other than anti-D that regularly causes severe HDFN is anti-c. The c-negative phenotype (common genotype \textit{D Ce/Ce}) is present in about 18\% of Caucasians and about 50\% of Chinese, but it is rare in Africans. In the Oxford region of England, over an 8-year period, 177 (0.06\%) of 280,000 pregnancies were complicated by maternal anti-c.\textsuperscript{29} Only one was associated with a neonatal death, but a total of 11 babies required exchange transfusion. Forty-one per cent of the sera with anti-c also contained anti-E. In three studies\textsuperscript{30–32}, between 14\% and 21\% of c-positive babies born to women with anti-c required exchange transfusion. In England and Wales over the period from 1977 to 1987, 26 babies, representing one in 250,000 births, died from anti-c HDFN. In 1987, despite anti-D prophylaxis, the mortality rate due to anti-c HDFN was still only one-tenth of that due to anti-D.\textsuperscript{22}

Anti-C, -E, -e and -G have all caused HDFN but the occurrence of each is rare and the outcome seldom severe. Some Rh antibodies, especially anti-E, react only
with protease-treated red cells in serological tests. One ‘enzyme-only’ anti-E became reactive with untreated red cells during pregnancy and caused HDFN requiring exchange transfusion. Anti-G detects an antigen common to the products of \textit{RHD} and the \textit{C} allele of \textit{RHCE}. Consequently, anti-G reacts with red cells expressing D and/or C. Anti-G may be mistaken for anti-D and may be present together with anti-D. Most molecular methods for predicting fetal phenotype will correctly predict a D-negative C-positive fetus to be D negative, but the fetus could still be at risk if the mother’s serum contains anti-G. Anti-C\textsuperscript{w} is not an uncommon antibody and defines an antigen present on the red cells of about 2–3% of Caucasians. HDFN due to anti-C\textsuperscript{w} is usually mild but neonatal deaths caused by anti-C\textsuperscript{w} were reported in the 1940s. Bowman and Pollock\textsuperscript{36} consider that these mortalities probably resulted from kernicterus in the absence of exchange transfusion. Other Rh-system antibodies that have been reported to have caused serious HDFN are anti-\textit{ce} (\textit{f}), -\textit{Ce}, -\textit{Ew}, -\textit{Hr} \textsubscript{o} (-\textit{Rh17}), -\textit{Hr}, -\textit{Rh29}, -\textit{Go}\textsuperscript{a}, -\textit{Rh32}, -\textit{Be}\textsuperscript{a}, -\textit{Evans}, -\textit{Tar} and -\textit{Rh46}.\textsuperscript{5}

### 2.5.3 Anti-K

Since the decline of HDFN caused by anti-D, much more attention has been focussed on HDFN due to anti-K, the original specificity of the Kell blood group system. The K-positive phenotype is present in about 9% of Europeans, but is less common in Africans and extremely rare in Eastern Asia and in native Americans. K achieves its highest level among people of the Arabian and Sinai peninsulas where up to 25% may be K positive.\textsuperscript{15} K expression results from a threonine/methionine substitution at position 193 in the Kell glycoprotein, which is a red cell membrane glycoprotein that may function as an endopeptidase and which has the ability to process the biologically active peptide endothelin.\textsuperscript{37,38} The amino acid substitution responsible for K expression disrupts a consensus sequence for \textit{N}-glycosylation and the resultant glycosylation change may explain the high immunogenicity of K compared with other Kell system antigens which also result from amino acid substitutions.\textsuperscript{37}

In Caucasian populations, anti-K is often the most common immune red cell antibody outside of the ABO and Rh systems. Giblett\textsuperscript{39} estimated the relative potency of antigens in stimulating the formation of antibodies and, after ABO and D, K attained the highest score with a relative potency of twice that for c, about 20 times that for \textit{Fy}\textsuperscript{a} and over 100 times that for S. Anti-K, like other Kell system antibodies, is generally IgG and, predominantly, IgG\textsubscript{1}.\textsuperscript{38,40}

K antibodies may cause severe fetal anaemia.\textsuperscript{5} In one series, maternal anti-K was detected in 127 (0.1\%) of 127076 pregnancies. Thirteen of these pregnancies with maternal anti-K resulted in a K-positive baby, five (38\%) of whom were very severely anaemic. Most anti-K appear to be induced by blood transfusion and it is
becoming common practice for girls and women of childbearing age to be transfused only with K-negative red cells, although anti-K stimulated by transfusion seems to cause a less severe disease than anti-K stimulated by previous pregnancy.\textsuperscript{41}

The pathogenesis of anaemia caused by anti-K differs from that due to anti-D. The severity of the disease due to anti-K is harder to predict than the disease due to anti-D. This is because there is very little correlation between anti-K titre and severity of disease and because HDFN due to anti-K is associated with lower concentrations of amniotic fluid bilirubin than HDFN due to anti-D. Postnatal hyperbilirubinaemia is not prominent in babies with anaemia caused by anti-K. There is also reduced reticulocytosis and erythroblastosis in the anti-K disease, compared with anti-D HDFN. These characteristics suggest that there is less haemolysis in HDFN caused by anti-K, compared with HDFN of comparable severity due to anti-D. This has led to speculation that fetal anaemia due to anti-K results predominantly from a suppression of erythropoiesis.\textsuperscript{42,43} Indeed, Kell glycoprotein is one of the first erythroid-specific antigens to appear on erythroid progenitors during erythropoiesis, whereas the Rh proteins appear much later.\textsuperscript{44,45} Vaughan et al. found that in vitro proliferation of K-positive erythroid blast-forming units and colony-forming units were specifically inhibited by monoclonal and polyclonal anti-K.\textsuperscript{46} They speculated that the Kell glycoprotein might be an endopeptidase involved in regulating the growth and differentiation of erythroid progenitors, possibly by modulating peptide growth factors on the cell surface. Consequently, binding of anti-K could block the enzymatic activity of the Kell glycoprotein and suppress erythropoiesis. This theory, however, does not take into account the K\textsubscript{0} phenotype, in which no Kell glycoprotein is present on the surface of erythroid cells, yet erythropoiesis is apparently normal. It is more likely, therefore, that anti-K suppresses erythropoiesis through the immune destruction of early erythroid progenitors in the fetal liver. Daniels et al. have used a functional assay to demonstrate that K-positive erythroid progenitors cultured from CD34-positive cells derived from a K-positive, Rh D-positive neonate, elicited a strong response from monocytes; no response was obtained with anti-D because Rh antigens do not appear on erythroid cells before they become haemoglobinized erythroblasts.\textsuperscript{45}

2.5.4 Other antibodies to Kell-system antigens

The Kell system consists of 23 antigens: four with frequencies between 2\% and 16\% in at least one major ethnic group, 14 of high frequency and five of low frequency. The Kell system polymorphisms and expression of the low frequency antigens or absence of the high frequency antigens all result from single amino acid substitutions in the large extracellular domain of the Kell glycoprotein.\textsuperscript{37} It is likely that
antibodies of all Kell-system specificities have the potential to cause HDFN which is usually, but not invariably, mild. HDFN requiring at least fetal transfusion has been reported for anti-k, -Kp, -Kpb, -Js, -Js, -Ua, -Ku and -K22.5

2.6 Antibodies that most commonly cause mild HDFN

2.6.1 The ABO system

Anti-A and -B are present in virtually everyone who lacks the corresponding antigen, making ABO different from all other blood group polymorphisms. This characteristic also makes ABO the most important blood group system in transfusion medicine as these antibodies can cause severe haemolytic transfusion reactions. From the HDFN point of view, however, anti-A and -B are less significant.

Taken at its most basic level, there are two ABO antigens, A and B, and four phenotypes, A, B, AB and O (a null phenotype in which neither A nor B is expressed). A and B antigens are oligosaccharide structures on cell surface glycoproteins and glycolipids. The major carriers of A and B on red cells are the anion exchanger (band 3) and the glucose transporter. The A and B genes do not encode the antigens directly but produce glycosyltransferase enzymes, which catalyse the transfer of immunodominant monosaccharides from a nucleotide donor substrate to an acceptor substrate. The acceptor substrate is an oligosaccharide chain terminating in a fucosylated galactose residue. This precursor structure is referred to as the H antigen and is present on the red cells of almost everyone. The immunodominant sugars of A and B are N-acetylgalactosamine and galactose, respectively. The A and B gene-specific glycosyltransferases differ by four amino acids. The A gene product transfers N-acetylgalactosamine to H to produce an A-active structure; the B gene product transfers galactose to H to produce a B-active structure. The common O allele contains a single base deletion, which causes a reading-frame shift and introduces a translation-termination codon, so the O allele product has no enzymatic activity and the H structure remains unconverted.47

There are many ABO variants but mostly they involve quantitative differences in the activity of the transferases and, consequently, quantitative differences in A or B antigen expression.5 The most important of these variants is A2 (the common alternative being A1), in which a shift in the position of the translation termination codon of an A allele produces a transferase of extended length, with impaired catalytic activity.

ABO frequencies vary in different populations. Typical European (British) frequencies are A 42%, B 8%, AB 3% and O 47%; about 80% of the group A people are A1 and 20% A2. Substantially higher frequencies of O are found in native Americans and in parts of Africa and Australia; higher frequencies of B are found
in Central Asia, with B being virtually absent in native Americans and Australians. A_2 is found mainly in Europe and Africa but is very rare or absent in the rest of the world.\textsuperscript{15}

Anti-A and anti-B are predominantly IgM but may be IgG. The sera of most group O people contain a cross-reacting antibody, called anti-A,B, that reacts with both A and B antigens and is often partly IgG. ABO HDFN is restricted almost exclusively to the fetuses of group O mothers. The relative clinical significance of anti-A,B compared with anti-A and anti-B is unclear.\textsuperscript{48}

About 15\% of pregnancies in women of European origin involve a group O mother with a group A or B fetus, yet ABO HDFN requiring clinical intervention is rare, although minor jaundice involving a small degree of red cell destruction may be relatively common. Hydrops due to ABO HDFN is exceedingly rare, but very occasionally exchange transfusion for the prevention of kernicterus is indicated.\textsuperscript{22} The main explanation for the low prevalence of clinically significant ABO HDFN is that ABO is a histo-blood group system (Section 2.4). Any antibody crossing the placenta is likely to become bound to placental tissue, reducing the quantity available for destruction of red cells. In addition, A and B red cell antigens are not fully developed in the fetus or even at birth.\textsuperscript{5}

About 85\% of Caucasians have a gene (\textit{FUT2}) that enables the secretion of soluble A and B antigens in body fluids. There is little evidence, however, that this secretion of A and B antigens plays any role in providing protection from HDFN.\textsuperscript{22}

In black people, Arabs and Taiwanese, ABO HDFN has a prevalence 2–6 times higher than in Europeans,\textsuperscript{49–51} perhaps because of the stronger expression of A and B antigens in these racial groups. In some populations, parasitic infection may result in higher levels of ABO antibodies, resulting in increased incidence of clinically significant HDFN.

### 2.7 Antibodies that rarely cause HDFN

Antibodies to red cell antigens from a variety of blood group systems, as well as some antibodies to high and low frequency antigens that do not yet belong to established systems, can also be responsible for causing symptoms of HDFN. In most instances, this entails no more than a positive direct antiglobulin test and slight jaundice, but, occasionally, these antibodies may give rise to HDFN requiring clinical intervention.

#### 2.7.1 MNS system

MNS is a large and complex blood group system. MNS-system antigens are located on one or both of two sialic-rich glycoproteins, glycophorin A and glycophorin B. Most anti-M and -N are not active at 37\°C and are usually benign, but severe
HDFN due to anti-M has occurred. Severe HDFN has also been attributed to anti-S, -s and -U. Other MNS antibodies that are reported to have caused HDFN are antibodies to the high frequency antigen En\textsuperscript{a} and antibodies to the low frequency antigens Mi\textsuperscript{a}, Vw, Hut, Hil, Mt\textsuperscript{a}, M\textsuperscript{y}, Far and sD\textsuperscript{5}.

The MNS red cell phenotype GP.Mur (Mi.III), in which the antigens Mi\textsuperscript{a}, Hil, MUT and MINY are expressed, is rare in most of the world but is relatively common in South-East Asia with frequencies between 2% and 10%. In Taiwan, antibody to these low frequency antigens (collectively described as anti-’Mi\textsuperscript{a}’) is the most frequent immune blood group antibody, with a prevalence of 0.8% in patients. ’Anti-Mi\textsuperscript{a}’ has caused severe HDFN and, consequently, cell panels for antibody screening in Taiwan include GP.Mur phenotype cells\textsuperscript{51}.

### 2.7.2 Duffy system

The Fya/Fyb polymorphism arises from a single amino acid substitution in the N-terminal extracellular domain of the Duffy glycoprotein, a member of the G protein-coupled superfamily of receptors. In a survey of 68 pregnancies in which anti-Fya was detected, 10 had indications of mild HDFN and three resulted in severe HDFN, two requiring intrauterine transfusion\textsuperscript{52}. The only reported case of HDFN due to anti-Fyb was treated by postnatal transfusion and phototherapy\textsuperscript{53}.

### 2.7.3 Kidd system

Despite being haemolytic and a common cause of delayed haemolytic transfusion reactions, antibodies to Jka\textsuperscript{a} and Jkb\textsuperscript{a}, a polymorphism representing an amino acid substitution on a red cell urea transporter, do not usually cause HDFN. One case of HDFN due to anti-Jka\textsuperscript{a} resulted in kernicterus\textsuperscript{54}.

### 2.7.4 Diego system

The Diego system consists of 21 antigens, each representing an amino acid substitution on band 3 glycoprotein, the red cell anion exchanger\textsuperscript{55}. Together with glycoporphin A, band 3 is the most abundant red cell surface glycoprotein, with about 10\textsuperscript{6} copies per cell. Di\textsuperscript{a}, the original Diego antigen, is rare in people of European and African origin but is common in native people of the Americas and in China and Japan, with frequencies of around 5% in Japanese rising to over 50% in some native South Americans. In Brazil, four (3.6%) of 112 multitransfused patients had anti-Di\textsuperscript{a}\textsuperscript{56}. Anti-Di\textsuperscript{a} can cause severe HDFN and, although this is rare in most populations, many examples have been described\textsuperscript{5}. HDFN due to anti-Di\textsuperscript{b} requiring neonatal exchange transfusion has also been reported\textsuperscript{5, 57}. Anti-Wr\textsuperscript{a} and anti-ELO, antibodies to two low frequency antigens of the Diego system, have both caused severe HDFN\textsuperscript{5, 58}. 

---

**Blood group antibodies in haemolytic disease**
2.7.5 Colton system
The Co\textsuperscript{a}/Co\textsuperscript{b} polymorphism results from a single amino acid substitution in a red cell water channel, aquaporin-1. Anti-Co\textsubscript{3} is the antibody which can be produced by the very rare individuals with an aquaporin-1 deficiency. Antibodies to the high frequency antigens Co\textsuperscript{a} and Co\textsubscript{3} have both caused severe HDFN.\textsuperscript{59–61}

2.7.6 Other antigens
Only a few of the antibodies to antigens that have not been shown to belong to a blood group system have caused HDFN serious enough to merit consideration of transfusion therapy; of the antibodies to low frequency antigens (700 series), these are anti-Rd, -HJK, -Kg, -REIT, -JFV and -JONES.\textsuperscript{5} With the exception of anti-MAM,\textsuperscript{62} antibodies to the high frequency antigens (901 series) have not caused severe HDFN.

2.8 Antibodies that do not cause HDFN
The paragloboside and globoside series glycolipid antigens (P1, P [globoside], P\textsuperscript{k} [CD77], and LKE) have not been implicated in severe HDFN. Red cells of the rare p phenotype lack all these antigens and an antibody, called anti-PP1P\textsuperscript{k}, is invariably present. Anti-PP1P\textsuperscript{k} usually contains an IgG3 fraction, but it does not cause HDFN. Anti-PP1P\textsuperscript{k} is, however, associated with habitual abortion, characteristically in the first trimester. The primary target for the antibodies appears to be the placenta and not the fetus.\textsuperscript{63} Anti-P in the rare P\textsuperscript{k} phenotype has also been associated with habitual abortion.\textsuperscript{64} Therapeutic plasmapheresis may be successful in such cases.

Antibodies of the Lutheran system do not cause HDFN, partly because the antigens are expressed only weakly on fetal cells and partly because the antibodies are absorbed by the placenta. Antibodies to the Lewis histo-blood group antigens (Le\textsuperscript{a} and Le\textsuperscript{b}) are generally not active at 37\degree C and the antigens are not expressed on fetal cells. In addition, antigens of the Yt, Xg, Scian, Dombrock, IW, Chido/Rodgers, Gerbich, Cromer, Knops, Indian, Kx, Ok and Raph systems and the Cost and Er collections have not been implicated in serious HDFN. Antibody to the high frequency antigen Vel has only caused mild HDFN, probably because anti-Vel is usually IgM and Vel is expressed weakly on fetal cells. Anti-JMH does not cause HDFN because the antigen is not present on fetal cells. Anti-Lan, -At\textsuperscript{a} and -Jr\textsuperscript{a} have only caused mild HDFN. Anti-Emm, -AnWj, -Sd\textsuperscript{a}, -Duclos (only one example known), -PEL and -ABTI have not caused HDFN.\textsuperscript{5}
2.9 Conclusions

HDFN due to antibodies with specificities other than D and c of the Rh system and K of the Kell system is rare. It is very important, however, to know the potential of antibodies of other specificities for causing HDFN. This can often be gauged on the basis of previous experience with other examples of the antibody, although this approach is not without hazard. Unexpected haemolysis could result from an unusually potent example of an antibody or a fetus with exceptionally strong expression of the red cell antigen. A more thorough comprehension of the biological reasons why antibodies of some specificities cause HDFN, whereas others do not, would assist in predicting the risk of HDFN in individual pregnancies.

2.10 References


31 Hardy J & Napier JAF (1981). Red cell antibodies detected in antenatal tests on Rhesus posi-


45 Daniels GL, Hadley AG & Green CA (1999). Fetal anaemia due to anti-K may result from immune destruction of early erythroid progenitors. *Transfusion Medicine*, 9 (suppl 1), 16 (abstract).


62 Montgomery W, Nance S, Kavitsky D et al. (1997). First example of hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN) due to an antibody to a high incidence antigen present on multiple cell lines (MCL). Transfusion, 37 (suppl), 41S (abstract).


3.1 Introduction
Levine and Stetson in 1939 first discovered an irregular agglutinating antibody in a previously transfused woman who had given birth to a stillborn child. However, it was not until IgG nonagglutinating (or ‘incomplete’) red cell antibodies could be demonstrated serologically that screening methods for HDFN began to be developed. These included the albumin method, the indirect antiglobulin test (IAGT) and the enzyme method. Of these, the albumin method is used less frequently, but the IAGT and, to some extent, the enzyme method remain important in serological screening for HDFN. This chapter reviews these methods and their ability to provide information that is useful for clinicians to identify and manage women at risk of HDFN.

3.2 The basis of screening for HDFN
Adequate and relevant information concerning the presence and nature of red cell alloantibodies in the plasma of pregnant women is essential for the effective management of potential HDFN. The purpose of screening in the laboratory is to provide this information to clinicians. Serological methods are effective in antenatal screening programmes because they are capable of detecting the vast majority of red cell alloantibodies that can cause HDFN (Section 2.5). Furthermore, methods can be chosen which detect IgG antibodies active at 37°C but which do not detect IgM antibodies active at temperatures below 37°C, since these antibodies do not cause HDFN. Serological methods are also used to determine the potency of antibodies (the strength of their reactivity with red cells) (Section 8.2).

Screening work is usually undertaken in blood transfusion laboratories because the techniques used for screening for HDFN are the same as those used in pretransfusion testing. However, there are also some important differences because the clinical relevance of red cell antibodies in the two situations may vary. These differences
are summarized in Table 3.1. In practice, screening tests for HDFN and pretransfusion tests are complementary because the presence of a red cell antibody in a pregnant woman may be important not only with respect to HDFN but also with respect to the selection of blood should transfusion be indicated for the mother or fetus. Laboratory protocols are therefore designed to take account of these overlapping requirements. The features of a typical protocol for antenatal testing in the blood transfusion laboratory should include those shown in Table 3.2. Some of the tasks listed require specialist expertise or equipment outside the scope of most laboratories and should be performed in a reference red cell serology laboratory.

### Table 3.1 Comparison between the laboratory features of screening for HDFN and pretransfusion testing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Screening for HDFN</th>
<th>Pretransfusion testing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABO group</td>
<td>Not important¹</td>
<td>Critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rh D group</td>
<td>Determines frequency of testing and use of prophylactic anti-D</td>
<td>Determines selection of blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibody screen at 37°C</td>
<td>Essential</td>
<td>Essential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibody screen below 37°C</td>
<td>Not recommended</td>
<td>Not recommended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibody identification</td>
<td>Essential</td>
<td>Essential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence of IgG antibody</td>
<td>Relevant</td>
<td>Relevant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence of IgM antibody</td>
<td>Not relevant</td>
<td>Relevant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potency of antibody</td>
<td>Usually valuable</td>
<td>Rarely of value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

¹ Usually performed, however (see Section 3.3.5).

3.3 Antenatal screening tests performed in the blood transfusion laboratory

3.3.1 Antiglobulin methods

Coombs et al.⁷ are generally credited with the discovery of the indirect antiglobulin test in 1945, although a version of the test had in fact been published over 30 years earlier by Moreschi.⁸ One year later, the former workers also described the direct antiglobulin test, which they used to detect in vivo sensitization of red cells in HDFN.⁵ Modern laboratories use the indirect antiglobulin test in antenatal and pretransfusion testing, albeit in several different guises, because it remains the simplest way of detecting red cell antibodies of clinical importance. Furthermore, it performs well in respect of two important requirements of a diagnostic test: it has an appropriate level of sensitivity and a high degree of specificity. In the antenatal context, this means that the indirect antiglobulin test is usually positive when a
maternal antibody of potential clinical significance is present, but usually negative in the absence of such an antibody.

The principle of the indirect antiglobulin test is simple. Serum or plasma from the mother is incubated with a panel of screening reagent red cells (Section 3.3.3). If an alloantibody is present, it will bind to antigens expressed on red cells from at
least one of the donors. The presence of the bound antibody is detected by addition of an antiglobulin reagent which consists of a nonhuman antibody with specificity for the gamma heavy chain of human IgG. Cell-bound antiglobulin is then demonstrated by liquid-phase agglutination or column agglutination, or in a solid-phase adherence method.9

Liquid-phase agglutination methods are generally performed in 75×12 mm glass tubes and require a washing phase (red cells and plasma are diluted with saline, centrifuged and the supernatant removed) in order to remove unbound immunoglobulins before the addition of antiglobulin reagent. Agglutination of reagent red cells indicates the presence of an antibody in the patient's plasma. Tube indirect antiglobulin test methods in the UK generally make use of low ionic strength saline to enhance antibody binding to red cells.10 Other methods of comparable sensitivity and which are also performed in tubes include the polyethylene glycol indirect antiglobulin test,11 the manual polybrene test taken through to an indirect antiglobulin test stage12 and those employing additive reagents from a number of commercial sources. Tube-based indirect antiglobulin test methods require particular attention to the washing and reading stages in order to achieve optimal sensitivity and consistency.13

The publication in 1990 of a serological method involving a mixture of Sephadex™ and Sephacryl™ gels has resulted in a very significant change to the performance of the indirect antiglobulin test in many laboratories.14 The commercial method involves the use of a plastic card containing six channels each with a column of gel admixed with antiglobulin reagent. Plasma or serum and reagent red cells are added to the top of a gel column and, following incubation and carefully controlled centrifugation, red cells coated with antibody are agglutinated and are thus unable to pass through the gel. Positive reactions are therefore distinguished by agglutinates at or near the top of the gel column and negative reactions appear as buttons of red cells at the bottom (Figure 3.1). Since plasma proteins are less dense than the gel, a washing phase is not needed which, together with the relative stability of the reaction endpoint, gives column agglutination methods a degree of simplicity and reliability not achieved by other methods. A similar column agglutination method involving a glass microbead density barrier in place of a gel is also available.15

Solid-phase methods based on 96-well plastic microplates provide another alternative to the tube indirect antiglobulin test.16–18 Although differing in detail, all of these methods achieve a positive reaction endpoint that is characterized by a monolayer of red cells across the bottom of the microplate well. A discrete button of red cells at the bottom of the well indicates a negative reaction (Figure 3.2). Although solid-phase methods are suitable for laboratories undertaking large numbers of antiglobulin tests, they suffer from the disadvantage that they require carefully standardized centrifugation and washing steps.
When performed correctly, all of the above methods are capable of a degree of sensitivity and specificity adequate for use in a routine blood transfusion laboratory. In general, the solid-phase methods have been found to be rather more sensitive than column agglutination methods, but more prone to unwanted positive reactions. UK guidelines do not mandate that any one particular type of indirect antiglobulin test method should be used for antenatal screening, but recommend that the chosen method is carefully validated before introduction into routine use.

---

Figure 3.1 Two column agglutination cards showing strong positive, intermediate positive and negative reactions. Top: Card contains a weak anti-D in each column tested by an indirect antiglobulin method (columns 1 and 2 using D-positive red cells and column 3 using D-negative red cells) and by an enzyme method (columns 4 and 5 using D-positive red cells and column 6 using D-negative red cells). Bottom: Card contains a weak anti-c in each column tested by an indirect antiglobulin method (column 1 using c-negative red cells and columns 2 and 3 using c-positive red cells) and by an enzyme method (column 4 using c-negative red cells and columns 5 and 6 using c-positive red cells).

The enhancement of reactivity of these weak Rh antibodies using an enzyme method is clearly evident.

Reproduced by kind permission of DiaMed-AG, Cressier Sur Morat, Switzerland
3.3.2 Enzyme methods

Red cells that are treated with a proteinase such as papain or bromelain become agglutinable by some IgG alloantibodies such as anti-D without the addition of an antiglobulin reagent. Treatment with these proteinases causes cleavage of glycoproteins from the red cell membrane with an associated loss of net negative charge from the red cells, thereby reducing intercellular repulsive forces. This, and other mechanisms that may be relevant to the action of enzymes in promoting agglutination of red cells, are reviewed elsewhere. Enzyme methods are simple to perform because there is no washing phase as in antiglobulin tests. They also have a very high sensitivity for the detection of antibodies such as anti-D and anti-c, both of which, if present in the mother’s plasma, can cause significant morbidity in the fetus. However, enzyme methods suffer from two important disadvantages. First, they cannot be used to detect the presence of an antibody, such as anti-Fy^a, that has a specificity for an antigen that is cleaved from the red cell surface by a proteolytic enzyme. Thus, an enzyme method should not be used for antibody screening unless an antiglobulin method is also used. Second, screening tests using enzyme-treated cells are more likely to be interpreted as positive in the absence of clinically significant antibody than is the case with antiglobulin methods. This is because positive and negative reactions are more difficult to distinguish in enzyme methods, and because plasma sometimes contains antibodies which preferentially or only react with enzyme-treated red cells. These ‘enzyme-only’ antibodies are rarely of clinical significance.

Figure 3.2 Two solid-phase microplate wells showing positive and negative reactions. *Left:* Monolayer of red cells indicates a positive result. *Right:* Button of red cells indicates a negative result.

*Reproduced by kind permission of Biotest (UK) Ltd, Solihull, UK.*
The value of enzyme methods in antenatal screening has been debated. On the one hand, it can be argued that the extra sensitivity of an enzyme method can be useful in detecting antibodies (particularly those with specificity for blood group antigens in the Rh system) that are too weak to be detected by an antiglobulin method. These antibodies may increase in potency during the course of the pregnancy and consequently could give rise to HDFN. On the other hand, a more pragmatic view is that such antibodies are unlikely to give rise to HDFN in the current pregnancy serious enough to cause significant morbidity in the infant. Current UK practice and recommendations in the USA reflect the latter view that laboratories need not use tests using enzyme-treated cells as part of their antibody screening protocols. This may be based in part on the recommendation that D-negative pregnant women should have a repeat antibody screen at 28–34 weeks. This is discussed in more detail below (Section 3.3.5).

### 3.3.3 The choice of red cells for screening tests

Reagent red cells used in screening tests should detect all common, clinically important antibodies. They must, therefore, express the blood group antigens that allow these antibodies to be detected. As a minimum, the following antigens must be represented: C, c, D, E, e, K, k, Fya, Fyb, Jka, Jkb, S, s, M, N, P1, Lea and Leb. Furthermore, wherever possible, there should be strong expression of these antigens, so that weak antibodies will be better detected. Anti-D, anti-c and anti-K are alloantibodies that are most likely to cause severe HDFN, and anti-e, anti-Ce, anti-Fya, anti-Jka and anti-Cw are not uncommon antibodies that are sometimes associated with HDFN (Section 2.5). Therefore, in order to ensure that weak examples of these antibodies are detected during pregnancy, red cells of the Rh phenotype R1R1 (probable genotype D Ce/Ce) and red cells of the Rh phenotype R2R2 (probable genotype D cE/cE) should be used in screening tests, and the phenotypes K/H11001, Fya/H11001b- and Jka/H11001b- should also be represented.

As is the case with screening cells used for pretransfusion tests, there is no requirement for the phenotypes Kp(a+) and Cw+ to be represented on red cells used for antenatal screening, notwithstanding the fact that these antibodies are not uncommonly encountered. The Kpa antigen has a frequency of about 2% in Caucasians and the Cw antigen has a frequency of about 4%. As a result of these low frequencies, reagent suppliers find it difficult or impossible to provide a matched set of reagent cells that meet the requirements outlined above and between them express Kpa and Cw. Anti-Kpa and anti-Cw are certainly capable of causing HDFN, but it is usually mild and failure to detect these antibodies is unlikely to cause serious problems providing the baby has good general postnatal care.

In practice, the screening cells used in antenatal testing are usually identical to those used in pretransfusion testing, because red cell alloantibodies that may cause
HDFN are usually also capable of reducing the in vivo survival of incompatible red cells following allogeneic transfusion.

3.3.4 Manual versus automated methods

Traditional serological methods using glass tubes are capable of achieving very high standards of sensitivity and specificity. However, the pipetting, reading and recording steps of these methods are labour intensive and subject to human error. These disadvantages can be overcome by using a column agglutination or solid-phase microplate method for antibody screening and by employing a semiautomated or automated system. The basic features of automated systems should include: trays or carousels to stack samples; automatic pipetting of samples and reagents; the use of bar codes on samples, and other devices to ensure that positive sample identification is obtained; clot sensor and liquid level alarms; an optical device to record reaction patterns; and comprehensive system management software that interprets reaction patterns and flags discrepant results.

The most flexible option is a robotic liquid-handler that can be adapted to perform pipetting operations for a variety of column agglutination or solid-phase technologies. This is made possible by the use of customized racking systems and by the use of versatile software supplied with the equipment. Similarly, image analysis and colorimetric readers are available which can interpret the reaction patterns obtained using different technologies. In this way, a modular system can be built up which allows antibody screening results to be uploaded into the laboratory’s main computer system. However, some operations, such as the transfer of microplates or column agglutination cassettes from the robot to the incubator, must be performed manually.

A second option is to choose a dedicated robotic liquid-handler and reader from a single supplier. The advantage of this is that the introduction of the equipment into the laboratory is likely to be much more straightforward, as it will have been designed for a single technology. The disadvantage is that the user is tied in to this technology for the life of the equipment.

Finally, there are ‘walk-away’ systems which perform all of the pipetting, incubation and reading stages of antibody screening.32,33 An example of one such system available in Europe is shown in Figure 3.3. These systems require very little manual intervention and are likely to have a high degree of inbuilt security, thus minimizing the chance of an erroneous result being recorded. However, they may have a lower throughput (because of a longer start to finish time) than a modular system and will of course be more expensive to purchase.

The choice that must be made will therefore be dependent on the throughput volume, the extent of security required and the budget of the laboratory.
3.3.5 Timing of screening tests

Blood samples for a variety of tests are usually taken from pregnant women during their first routine antenatal assessment (in the UK, termed ‘booking’). This usually occurs at 10–16 weeks’ gestation. One sample should be sent to the blood transfusion laboratory for ABO and D grouping and for the antibody screen. Depending on the methods in use in the laboratory, clotted or anticoagulated samples may be used, as plasma or serum are generally considered to be equally suitable for antibody detection. Anticoagulated samples will be required by laboratories performing automated ABO and D grouping. The necessity for and timing of a second maternal sample during pregnancy is dependent on the antibody screening test result and on the D status of the mother.

Since anti-D is a frequently encountered antibody, and because it is capable of causing severe HDFN, women who are D negative should have a further blood sample taken at 28–30 weeks’ gestation for a further screening test. Prophylactic anti-D should be administered to the mother immediately following
venepuncture. In the UK, some laboratories routinely perform a third antibody screen at 30–36 weeks’ gestation in D-negative women. This practice is discouraged, because if a woman has received prophylactic anti-D, then the antibody screening test will be positive even if she has not produced an alloantibody. Furthermore, it is unlikely that alloimmunization at such a late stage during pregnancy would cause severe HDFN. Opinion is divided over whether D-positive women should have a second antibody screen performed at 28–36 weeks, if the screening test performed at booking is negative. This is no longer recommended in the USA, but continues to be recommended in the UK on the basis that very occasionally during pregnancy D-positive women produce antibodies that pose a potential threat to the fetus. It would seem that the discrepancy between these guidelines arises from different views on the cost-effectiveness of repeat testing.

### 3.4 The identification of red cell alloantibodies

When a red cell alloantibody has been detected using screening cells, further serological investigation is required in order to determine the nature and specificity of the antibody or antibodies that are present. This information is necessary in order for the obstetrician to take a view on the likely clinical significance for the fetus. It will also give the blood bank forewarning of any difficulties that may be encountered in providing blood for the mother, fetus or infant.

#### 3.4.1 Methods

It is essential that an antiglobulin method be used to determine specificity, as activity by indirect antiglobulin test is the best indicator to the laboratory that a clinically significant antibody may be present. Usually, the particular indirect antiglobulin technique that was used for antibody screening will also be suitable for antibody identification. However, because solid-phase methods are more suitable for bulk testing, users of this method for screening often choose to employ an alternative method (e.g. gel or tube indirect antiglobulin test) for antibody identification.

Enzyme methods are generally considered to be more useful for antibody identification than for screening. This is because enzyme methods are more sensitive than the indirect antiglobulin test for the detection of Rh antibodies and may, therefore, give clearer reaction patterns if a weakly reactive antibody is present. Furthermore, the use of a second method will improve the likelihood that the presence of more than one antibody specificity will be recognized and may make the resolution of these specificities easier. Finally, the propensity of enzyme methods to give unwanted positive results is less of an irritation with antibody identification work than with antibody screening.
A direct agglutination (‘saline’) method which detects antibodies capable of agglutinating red cells without the addition of an antiglobulin reagent is often used in antibody identification. However, antibodies that are reactive by this method are most likely to be IgM and, therefore, present no threat to the fetus. The value of the method again lies in the fact that some antibodies which react weakly by indirect antiglobulin test may be better detected by direct agglutination. Moreover, a secondary method may help resolve mixtures of antibody specificities. Workers using a tube indirect antiglobulin method can determine whether red cells are directly agglutinated by examining the red cells before the wash phase of the test is commenced.

### 3.4.2 The principles of antibody identification

In order to identify the specificity of an alloantibody, the maternal serum or plasma must be tested against a panel of red cells from at least eight individuals. These red cells will have been carefully selected by the supplier to ensure that almost all red cell antibodies, apart from those directed against low frequency antigens, will be reactive against at least one sample from the panel. The panel should also allow the resolution of commonly occurring mixtures of antibodies.²¹,³¹

When the mother’s serum or plasma sample has been incubated with each example of red cells from the identification panel and the test results examined for reactivity, the assignment of results must be compared with the antigen profile of the panel cells. Correlation of positive and negative results with the presence and absence of an antigen on the red cells indicates an antibody of corresponding specificity.

The specificity of the antibody can be assigned with reasonable confidence when it reacts with at least two examples of red cells expressing an antigen and fails to react with at least two examples of red cells lacking the antigen.²¹ A slightly more conservative approach is taken in the USA where the general recommendation is that three matching positive and three matching negative reactions should be obtained.³¹ The discrepancy between the UK and US guidelines is discussed elsewhere.³⁶ When the presence of more than one antibody in the patient’s plasma is suspected, only results with red cells that possess one or none of the appropriate antigens will be informative, unless the antibodies are detected by different techniques or unless their reaction strengths are very different.

A knowledge of the serological methods by which red cell antibodies of different specificities usually react helps identification. Table 3.3 shows the modes of reactivity and the frequency of occurrence of red cell alloantibodies which are active at 37°C. Some practical examples of how an identification panel can be used to identify red cell antibodies are shown in Table 3.4. When an antibody has been clearly identified by an indirect antiglobulin method, the presence of other
### Table 3.3 Characteristic modes of reactivity of red cell antibodies active at 37°C using three different techniques

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System</th>
<th>Antigen</th>
<th>Indirect anti-globulin test</th>
<th>Papain(^1)</th>
<th>Direct agglutination</th>
<th>Occurrence at 37°C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MNS</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>s</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Very uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>P(_1)</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rh</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Very common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C(_w)</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lutheran</td>
<td>Lu(_a)</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lu(_b)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Very uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kell</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>k</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kp(_a)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kp(_b)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Very uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Js(_a)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Very uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Js(_b)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Very uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lewis</td>
<td>Le(_a)</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Le(_b)</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duffy</td>
<td>Fy(_a)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fy(_b)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fy(_3)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Very uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidd</td>
<td>Jk(_a)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jk(_b)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diego</td>
<td>Di(_a)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Very rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Di(_b)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Very rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yt</td>
<td>Yt(_a)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Very uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yt(_b)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Very rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xg</td>
<td>Xg(_a)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Very rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scianna</td>
<td>Sc1</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Very rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sc2</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Very rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dombrock</td>
<td>Do(_a)</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Very rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do(_b)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Very rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colton</td>
<td>Co(_a)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Very uncommon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Co(_b)</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Very uncommon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

\(^1\) Refers to a direct agglutination method using papain-treated red cells. Some antibodies which are nonreactive by this method will be reactive by a papain-IAGT.
Table 3.4 Three examples of the use of a 10-cell antibody identification panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ABO</th>
<th>Rh</th>
<th>MNS</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>Lewis</th>
<th>Kell</th>
<th>Duffy</th>
<th>Kidd</th>
<th>#1</th>
<th>#2</th>
<th>#3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>R⁺R⁺</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>R⁺R⁻</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>R⁻R₂</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>R₀R₀</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>r⁺r</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>r⁺r</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>r⁻r</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>r⁻r</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>r⁻r</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>r⁻r</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

Key: IAGT = Indirect antiglobulin test; Enz = Enzyme test.

The presence or absence of an antigen on the panel red cells is indicated by a + or − respectively. For clarity, only some blood group antigens are shown. Reaction patterns of plasma samples #1, #2 and #3 with the panel red cells have been graded on a scale from 0 (negative, i.e. no reaction) to 5 (strongly positive), with grades 1, 2, 3 and 4 indicating increasingly strong reactivity.

Plasma sample #1

Plasma sample #2

Plasma sample #3

Plasma sample #3

The sample contains anti-K active by the indirect antiglobulin test and enzyme methods, and anti-S active by indirect antiglobulin test only. Note that the anti-S is showing ‘dosage’: stronger reactions are obtained with K−S+s- red cells than with K−S+s+ cells, because of the greater antigen site density in the former case.
antibodies should be excluded by ensuring that the panel cells that fail to react cover all of the blood group antigens corresponding to other clinically significant antibodies. Other methods, such as the enzyme method, help in this process of confirmation of specificity and exclusion of other antibody specificities. This is illustrated in Table 3.4. Results from samples #1 and #2 show that this process may be straightforward using a single indirect antiglobulin method. Sample #3, however, has given a pattern of reactivity which is more difficult to interpret, and the value of an additional enzyme method is demonstrated by its ability to pick out one specificity (anti-K in this case). Although the requirement of the ‘two positive and two negative cells’ guideline has been met (at least two of each of K+S−, K−S+ and K−S− red cells in this case), many workers would consider it advisable to test sample #3 against more examples of K−S− red cells, in order to improve the confidence with which antibody specificity has been assigned.

It is good practice to phenotype the mother’s red cells using a typing reagent of the same specificity as that assigned to the antibody following identification, because a negative result with this reagent provides some confirmation of the assigned specificity. A positive result with the mother’s blood would either indicate that the antibody is an autoantibody rather than an alloantibody, or that the mother’s red cells have a variant expression of antigen, or that the assigned specificity is incorrect. Indirect antiglobulin test active autoantibodies are rarely encountered in antenatal serology and generally their presence can be confirmed by performing a direct antiglobulin test on the mother’s red cells. Autoantibodies often show no obvious specificity, although autoantibodies with an apparent anti-D specificity are not infrequent. By far the most commonly encountered examples of a variant expression of antigen are the partial D phenotypes (Section 2.5.1).

3.4.3 Difficulties encountered in antibody identification

Sometimes the pattern of reactivity obtained using the identification panel does not show a clear correlation with the profile of one antigen. There are a number of possible explanations for this finding. One of the most likely is that the patient’s plasma contains antibodies of more than one specificity. The process by which multiple antibody specificities in a single sample are resolved is similar to that described above, but only occasionally can mixtures of antibodies be resolved using a single identification panel. Usually, a second panel is needed, and sometimes even this is insufficient.

Resolving difficult serological problems is time-consuming and requires care and expertise. However, the time within which a reliable conclusion is arrived at can often be reduced by:

- a knowledge of a pre-existing antibody or antibodies, which will enable the serologist to select red cells that lack the corresponding antigens early on in the inves-
tigation, so that other antibodies can be identified or excluded more quickly;
• using other methods, such as the use of papain-treated red cells in the indirect antiglobulin test, which may facilitate the resolution of complex mixtures or the identification of more unusual specificities;
• the careful use of reaction grades (see example #3 in Table 3.4); and
• phenotyping the mother’s red cells early on in the investigation, so that likely specificities of alloantibodies can be recognized.

Many red cell alloantibodies show different strengths of reactivity with different examples of antigen-positive red cells and, consequently, may cause extra difficulty in identification. In general, this variability in reactivity is caused by variable antigen expression on the red cell membrane. Antibodies such as anti-c, -e, -M, -S and -Jk\(^a\) often show dosage, which means that they react more strongly with red cells having homozygous expression of the corresponding gene than with red cells having heterozygous expression (see sample #3 in Table 3.4).

Some antibodies, for example anti-Kn\(^a\) and anti-Ch, are particularly difficult to identify, because they show variable reactivity with antigen-positive red cells and because the presence or absence of antigen is not reflected in the antigen profile of the cell panel for antibody identification. Furthermore, antibodies that are directed against high frequency antigens (antigens having a frequency greater than 99% in the general population) can rarely be properly identified without recourse to a special frozen panel of red cells having rare phenotypes. In these situations, the sample should be sent to a reference laboratory that has the resources to undertake more extensive serological investigations.

3.4.4 Implications of detecting a red cell alloantibody during pregnancy

The need for further laboratory work when a red cell alloantibody has been identified depends on the nature and specificity of the antibody detected. It can be assumed that an indirect antiglobulin test-active antibody is likely to be IgG. However, even if the antibody is known to be IgG, it may be of a specificity that is rarely (Section 2.7) or never (Section 2.8) associated with HDFN. Notwithstanding this, as a general rule, the laboratory should determine the potency of an indirect antiglobulin test-active antibody either using a quantitative (Section 8.2) or serological (Section 8.1) assay.

Although it is generally agreed that samples should only be tested when it is likely that results could influence the clinical management of the pregnancy, opinion differs regarding the usefulness of repeat assays of antibody potency during pregnancy. In the USA, there is no clear consensus as to the value of a critical titre below which invasive techniques need not be undertaken.\(^{31}\) Guidelines in the UK, on the other hand, make specific recommendations concerning the interpretation of anti-D levels (obtained using continuous flow analyzers) and other antibody levels
which will provide the obstetrician with information that may influence clinical management, even when fetal monitoring has begun. A synopsis of the UK British Committee for Standards in Haematology Guidelines is shown in Table 3.5.

3.5 Paternal and fetal phenotyping

In addition to phenotyping red cells from the mother for the reasons described above, it may be useful to establish the phenotypes of red cells from the father and fetus.

3.5.1 Paternal phenotype

If a mother’s plasma has been shown to contain a red cell antibody that could affect the fetus, a paternal sample should be requested wherever possible. The paternal red cells can then be phenotyped for the relevant antigen and for its antithetical (alternative) antigen, thus providing information regarding the likelihood of the fetus inheriting the antigen and thereby being exposed to risk of HDFN. In blood group systems such as Kell, where there is a pair of antithetical antigens, interpretation of the phenotype is relatively straightforward. For example, the paternal phenotype K+k+ would indicate that the paternal genotype is Kk, and, therefore, that the fetus has an equal (50%) chance of inheriting a paternal K gene or a paternal k gene. If the maternal alloantibody is anti-K, and the maternal red cells kk, the fetus will inherit a maternal k gene. There is, therefore, an equal chance that the fetus will
have the genotype $Kk$ or $kk$, and therefore an equal chance that the fetus could be affected by the maternal anti-$K$.

Unfortunately, paternal phenotyping for $D$ is less useful, because there is no antigen antithetical to $D$. However, linkage disequilibrium between the $D$ and $CE$ genes means that, if anti-$D$, -C, -c, -E and -e reagents are used, an estimate of the likely homozygosity for $D$ can be determined (Table 3.6). This approach is reliable for Caucasians, but may be less so for nonCaucasians, because of the differences in gene frequencies in different ethnic groups. For example, the $R^0$ ($Dce$) haplotype is much more common in some nonCaucasian populations.

### 3.5.2 Fetal phenotype

This may be determined directly from a pretransfusion fetal blood sample. Care must be taken in interpreting results because both false positive and false negative results may be obtained. Wherever possible, IgM monoclonal phenotyping reagents should be used. A direct antiglobulin test should also be performed on the fetal red cells in order to determine whether the fetal cells have been coated with antibody. The expected findings are either both tests negative (for example, fetus $D$ negative and direct antiglobulin test negative if the maternal antibody is anti-$D$) or both tests positive (for example, fetus $D$ positive and direct antiglobulin test positive). If the direct antiglobulin test is strongly positive, and phenotyping for the putative implicated antigen gives a negative result using an IgM reagent, ‘blocking’

---

**Table 3.6** Estimates of the likelihood of homozygosity for $D$ in Caucasians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phenotype</th>
<th>Phenotyping reagent</th>
<th>Alternative genotypes&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Likelihood&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt; of homozygosity for $D$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R&lt;sub&gt;1&lt;/sub&gt;r</td>
<td>$Dce/dce$</td>
<td>$R^1r$</td>
<td>4.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R&lt;sub&gt;1&lt;/sub&gt;R&lt;sub&gt;1&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>$Dce/Dce$</td>
<td>$R^1R^1$</td>
<td>97.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;r</td>
<td>$DcE/dce$</td>
<td>$R^2r$</td>
<td>4.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R&lt;sub&gt;1&lt;/sub&gt;R&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>$DcE/DcE$</td>
<td>$R^1R^2$</td>
<td>96.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;R&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>$DcE/dcE$</td>
<td>$R^2R^2$</td>
<td>96.6%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1 Rare alternative genotypes have not been shown.
2 Based on Swedish genotype frequencies.<sup>37</sup>
of antigen sites by large amounts of maternal antibody should be suspected. A reliable phenotyping result can usually be obtained in these circumstances by removal of the antibody using chloroquine diphosphate\(^{38}\) or ‘ZZAP’ reagent.\(^{39}\) Phenotyping red cells which are direct antiglobulin test positive should not be performed using IgG-specific antiglobulin reagents if at all possible.

Molecular genetic methods provide an alternative to serological methods for typing fetal red cells. These methods are based on the analysis of fetal DNA usually harvested from amniotic fluid and are considered in detail in Chapter 7.

### 3.6 Laboratory tests immediately following delivery

There is no need for the blood bank to perform laboratory tests on infants of D-positive women unless the infant develops signs suggestive of HDFN or unless the mother is known to have a red cell antibody that may be causative of HDFN. A direct antiglobulin test should then be performed on cord blood cells.

Maternal and cord samples should be taken from D-negative women who have not produced anti-D. The cord sample should be used to determine the infant’s D status, thus identifying women who must receive prophylactic anti-D immunoglobulin. A direct antiglobulin test should be performed on cord red cells when the infant is D positive, if the infant develops signs suggestive of HDFN or if the mother is known to have a red cell antibody that may be causative of HDFN.

A positive direct antiglobulin test indicates the potential for a haemolytic process, but the degree of red cell agglutination does not correlate well with the severity of haemolysis. Confirmation of the specificity of the causative antibody can be obtained by testing the plasma or serum of a maternal or cord sample. Elution of antibody from cord red cells may also be helpful.\(^{20,31}\) If the direct antiglobulin test is positive and tests for red cell alloantibodies are negative, then it is likely that an ABO antibody or an antibody to a low frequency antigen has coated the cord cells. The former can be identified by testing the eluate against A1 and B cells. If an antibody to a low frequency antigen is suspected, then some confirmation may be obtained by testing the eluate against paternal red cells, but determination of the specificity will probably require referral to a reference laboratory.\(^{31}\)

In addition to these serological tests, a test should also be performed to determine the requirement for anti-D immunoglobulin (Section 6.3). Cord Hb and bilirubin concentrations should also be measured.

### 3.7 References

Epidemiology and screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia

Lorna M Williamson¹ and Michael F Murphy²
¹ National Blood Service and University of Cambridge, Cambridge, UK
² National Blood Service and University of Oxford, Oxford, UK

4.1 Background

Alloimmune thrombocytopenia is the commonest cause of severe neonatal thrombocytopenia. The pathophysiology and diagnosis of the disorder are described elsewhere (Sections 1.1.3, 1.3.3 and Chapter 12). Most cases are diagnosed after birth, hence the commonly used term neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia. However, there may be severe effects on the fetus in utero, and this, as well as the aetiology, may be emphasized through the use of the alternative term, alloimmune thrombocytopenia. In contrast to HDFN, alloimmune thrombocytopenia frequently occurs in first pregnancies.¹,²

Considerable progress has been made in laboratory aspects of platelet immunology since alloimmune thrombocytopenia was first recognized in the 1950s, allowing more precise diagnosis of the condition (Section 12.4).³ There have also been advances in fetal and transfusion medicine resulting in improvements in its management, particularly in the antenatal management of women with a previous history of pregnancies affected by alloimmune thrombocytopenia (Section 14.3). These advances in laboratory diagnosis and antenatal management have drawn attention to the fact that the first affected fetus/neonate in a family is only recognized after bleeding has occurred, and this has raised the question of screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

The purpose of this chapter is to review the epidemiology of alloimmune thrombocytopenia and then to consider the case for antenatal screening against the criteria for screening programmes set by the UK’s Department of Health National Screening Committee. Finally, areas where knowledge is still lacking, and where research effort should be directed, will be highlighted.
4.2 Epidemiology and the natural history of alloimmune thrombocytopenia

4.2.1 The incidence of maternal alloimmunization

Series of cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia with detectable platelet-specific alloantibodies have implicated anti-HPA-1a in 78–89% of cases; anti-HPA-5b is involved in 6–15% of cases and the remainder are due to other specificities.\(^1\) Thrombocytopenia due to anti-HPA-5b has been reported to be less severe than that due to anti-HPA-1a, but there are few data on the severity of alloimmune thrombocytopenia due to other HPA antibodies.\(^2\)

About 2.5% of pregnant Caucasian women are HPA-1a negative and most of these women will carry HPA-1a-positive fetuses, as 97.5% of individuals are HPA-1a positive. However, only about 10% of HPA-1a-negative women develop anti-HPA-1a (Table 4.1).\(^3\)–\(^7\) Alloimmunization to HPA-1a appears to be restricted to women with the HLA-DRw52a (HLA-DR3*0101) gene. This is present in only one in three Caucasian women (Section 1.1.3). HPA-1a alloimmunization is rare in women who lack this antigen,\(^8\) with a negative predictive value of the absence of HLA-DR3*0101 for HPA-1a alloimmunization in HPA-1a-negative women of >99%. However, the positive predictive value of its presence for alloimmunization has been estimated to be only 35%,\(^7\) limiting its usefulness in antenatal screening and suggesting that different HLA or some nonHLA genes are also involved. Furthermore, the additional costs of HLA typing would be considerable and these would be much greater than the modest costs of screening all HPA-1a-negative women for HPA-1a antibodies regardless of their HLA type.

### Table 4.1 Alloimmune thrombocytopenia due to HPA-1a alloimmunisation during pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study (reference)</th>
<th>Number of pregnant women studied</th>
<th>Number of HPA-1a-negative women</th>
<th>Number of women with anti-HPA-1a thrombocytopenia</th>
<th>Overall incidence of alloimmune thrombocytopenia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1211</td>
<td>26 (2.2%)</td>
<td>2/23 (8.7%)</td>
<td>2 (1:600)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>81 (1.6%)</td>
<td>3/50 (6%)</td>
<td>1 (1:5000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>3473</td>
<td>74 (2.2%)</td>
<td>2/22 (9.1%)</td>
<td>3 (1:1150)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>24417</td>
<td>618 (2.5%)</td>
<td>46/387 (12%)</td>
<td>22 (1:1100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>15471</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10 (1:1500)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>5362</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5 (1:1126)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note:* Including one twin pregnancy.

4.2.2 The incidence of fetal thrombocytopenia due to maternal alloimmunization

In a large prospective study of 24417 pregnancies in East Anglia, UK, the incidence of severe thrombocytopenia (less than 50 \times 10^9/l) at birth due to alloimmune
thrombocytopenia was one in 1100. This is in agreement with previous smaller studies (Table 4.1). It can be estimated that the number of cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia in the UK is about 400–800 each year (based on 800000 births in the UK annually and an incidence of alloimmune thrombocytopenia of one in 1000–2000). It is generally agreed that alloimmune thrombocytopenia is underdiagnosed in routine clinical practice and this was supported by a recent survey of haematologists in the UK on the recognition and postnatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

4.2.3 The incidence of intracranial haemorrhage and other sequelae

In considering the frequency of clinical sequelae, care must be taken to differentiate the incidence reported in series of clinically apparent alloimmune thrombocytopenia from incidence figures derived from screening studies. The incidence of severe thrombocytopenia (one in 1100) in the screening study of Williamson et al. included those cases which would have been diagnosed clinically as well as some asymptomatic cases which would not. The number of asymptomatic cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia ranges from 10% to 25% of those alloimmunized, and so the incidence of clinically affected cases can be reliably estimated as being in the region of one in 1500 pregnancies.

The long-term outcome in severe cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia may be devastating, entailing blindness and major physical and mental disability. Intracerebral haemorrhage, which is the major cause of mortality and long-term morbidity in alloimmune thrombocytopenia, occurs in 15–20% of clinically apparent cases. In one study of 137 cases, death due to severe haemorrhage occurred in 7% and there were neurological sequelae in 21%. Although there is a serious risk of severe haemorrhage at the time of delivery, nearly 50% of intracerebral haemorrhages occur in utero, usually between 30 and 35 weeks of gestation, but sometimes before 20 weeks. There may be more unusual presentations such as isolated fetal hydrocephalus, unexplained fetal anaemia or recurrent miscarriages. Determination of the long-term clinical effects of alloimmune thrombocytopenia in a large cohort of affected children is an area where future research is required.

4.2.4 The influence of obstetric history on clinical outcome

The subsequent pregnancies of HPA-1a alloimmunized women with a history of a previously affected infant are well recognized to be associated with a high risk of recurrence, and a poor outcome. For example, the 10 cases in the report by Burrows and Kelton occurred predominantly in women with a past history of alloimmune thrombocytopenia. All neonates had cord blood platelet counts of less than $50 \times 10^9/l$, the majority below $20 \times 10^9/l$; three had intracerebral haemorrhages
in utero, and one was stillborn. This provides the justification for early antenatal intervention to reduce the risk of morbidity and mortality from severe haemorrhage in families with a past history of an affected infant.

The outcome of pregnancies of women with anti-HPA-1a but no history is different from those with a past history of affected pregnancies. In the prospective study of 24417 pregnancies by Williamson et al., of the 26 infants born to women with persistent antibodies in the antenatal period, nine were severely thrombocytopenic (platelet counts less than $50 \times 10^9/l$) and 10 had mild thrombocytopenia (platelet counts $50–150 \times 10^9/l$). One had definite evidence of major antenatal intracerebral haemorrhage, and one died due to haemorrhage after fetal blood sampling carried out to investigate unexplained fetal hydrops which itself could have been due to chronic haemorrhage resulting in fetal anaemia. The former infant was found to have a large intracerebral haemorrhage following emergency Caesarean section at 37 weeks' gestation carried out because of an abnormal heart trace during labour; hydrocephalus developed, and the child now has delayed motor development and optic atrophy. From this large study, the incidence of severe antenatal intracerebral haemorrhage appears to be in the range of one in 12500–25000 pregnancies.

4.3 Criteria for antenatal screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia

An important consideration is whether to carry out screening antenatally or postnatally. The advantages of antenatal screening is that alloimmunized women can be identified during the index pregnancy, allowing time for antenatal intervention if this is agreed to be appropriate. Even if no antenatal intervention is undertaken, the mode and timing of delivery could then be planned to ensure minimal trauma to the baby’s head and that compatible platelets are made available. Postnatal screening can be achieved by simply carrying out a platelet count on a cord blood sample, but the major drawback of this approach is that the key objective of screening, to prevent morbidity and mortality from intracerebral haemorrhage, is unlikely to be achieved in the first affected pregnancy.

At present in the UK, antenatal screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia is not routine practice. It is therefore useful to examine the case for screening against the criteria for screening programmes set by the UK’s Department of Health Screening Committee. These 10 criteria are considered below in relation to alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

4.3.1 The condition should be an important health problem

The incidence of severe antenatal haemorrhage appears to be in the range of one in 12500–25000 pregnancies, equating to 32–64 cases in the UK each year. Assuming that only 50% of fetuses with severe antenatal haemorrhage survive, it can be esti-
mated that there will be 16–32 infants each year in the UK with severe physical and/or mental disability caused by alloimmune thrombocytopenia requiring long-term care with its considerable associated costs.

4.3.2 The epidemiology of the condition should be known
As described above, the epidemiology of the condition is well understood; the incidence of clinically affected cases can be reliably estimated as being in the region of one in 1500 pregnancies.

4.3.3 The natural history of the condition should be understood
The natural history of alloimmune thrombocytopenia is described above. Unfortunately, there is no reliable predictor of severe clinical disease which might be used to select pregnancies for aggressive intervention. In the study of Williamson et al., a high titre of anti-HPA-1a was predictive of a fetal platelet count of less than $50 \times 10^9/l$, but this observation has yet to be confirmed by other studies using state-of-the-art antibody detection techniques. Furthermore, the limitations of HPA antibody detection and variation in antibody titres were highlighted in a recent quality assessment exercise carried out by platelet serology laboratories. An alternative approach is to examine the biological functions of HPA antibodies. Bioassays such as chemiluminescence and antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity have been used in HDFN (Section 8.4) but their role in alloimmune thrombocytopenia has not been established. Some examples of anti-HPA-1a inhibit megakaryocyte precursors in bone marrow cultures. The role of inhibition of erythropoiesis is well established in HDFN due to anti-K (Section 2.5.3), but further work is required to determine if a similar correlation exists in alloimmune thrombocytopenia. The lack of laboratory parameters predictive of severe disease remains a major barrier to routine antenatal screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia and is an important area for future research.

4.3.4 There should be a recognized latent period or early asymptomatic stage
This could be defined as the presence of maternal anti-HPA antibodies without fetal/neonatal thrombocytopenia, mild thrombocytopenia or even severe thrombocytopenia, but without clinical sequelae. One of the difficulties of antenatal screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia is that fetal blood sampling is required to differentiate between these degrees of clinical severity in the antenatal period. This has the potential to cause fetal loss from haemorrhage from the cord or to induce premature delivery. There is also the potential to boost antibody levels by causing fetomaternal haemorrhage. Fetal blood sampling for alloimmune thrombocytopenia should be performed at referral centres, where the risk is about 1%. The main problems are most likely with early fetal blood sampling at around 20–22 weeks’
gestation when the cord is small and the platelet count may be very low. In the series of Murphy et al.,\textsuperscript{18} which extends to nearly 200 fetal blood samplings for alloimmune thrombocytopenia, there were two fetal deaths, one due to bleeding and one due to a cord haematoma.

4.3.5 All the cost-effective primary prevention interventions should have been implemented as far as practicable

There are no available primary prevention interventions for alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

4.3.6 There should be a simple, safe, precise and validated screening test

The first consideration in formulating an approach to screening is to decide whether to type pregnant women for HPA-1a (the antigen) or to test them for anti-HPA-1a (the antibodies). Typing for HPA-1a seems to be the logical first step since 98% of women are HPA-1a positive and can be excluded from further investigation. Reliable assays are available for HPA-1a phenotyping using platelet-rich plasma,\textsuperscript{19} platelet-poor plasma\textsuperscript{20} or whole blood.\textsuperscript{20–22} Genotyping for HPA-1a can be carried out, but it is not yet feasible on a large scale.

Where the father is heterozygous (HPA-1a/1b), it would be advantageous to HPA-1 type the fetus, who has a 50% chance of being HPA-1b/1b (HPA-1a negative) like the mother, and therefore not at risk of alloimmune thrombocytopenia. HPA-1 genotyping can be carried out using chorionic villous or amniotic fluid samples to avoid the risks of fetal blood sampling. In the future, it may be possible to carry out typing for platelet antigens using samples of maternal plasma, as has been described for fetal RhD typing.\textsuperscript{23}

Antibody screening can be carried out by a number of different assays. The most commonly used is the monoclonal antibody immobilization of platelet antigens (MAIPA) assay (Section 12.4.2.2) which is both sensitive and specific. However, even reference laboratories do not obtain entirely congruent results and further improvements are required.\textsuperscript{14} It is recognized that anti-HPA-1a is undetectable in a small proportion of HPA-1a-negative women with pregnancies affected by alloimmune thrombocytopenia, but the proportion of such cases appears to be decreasing as the testing methods improve.

4.3.7 The distribution of test values in the target population should be known and a suitable cut-off level defined and agreed

HPA-1a typing is generally very reliable, even when used on a large scale, although two HPA-1a negative women were typed incorrectly in a large prospective study of 24,417 women\textsuperscript{7}; these women had affected infants and were found to be HPA-1a-negative on retesting. A recently developed ELISA method using maternal whole
blood and a novel recombinant HPA-1a monoclonal antibody lends itself to large-scale screening as it is suitable for automated sample handling.\textsuperscript{22} Since testing for anti-HPA-1a antibodies is not entirely reliable, it is possible that a small number of affected pregnancies would be missed by a screening algorithm using antibody testing as the first step.

4.3.8 The test should be acceptable to the population
With public concern about the ethical aspects of screening for inherited diseases, it is easy to imagine that screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia could be perceived as being ‘genetic’ screening. However, in the large study of Williamson et al.,\textsuperscript{7} 74% of HPA-1a-negative women agreed to enrol for further investigation; fetal blood sampling was not part of the protocol but available at a reference centre if requested. All women found to have anti-HPA-1a chose to be managed conservatively, although knowledge of the presence of antibodies increased the rate of Caesarean section to 36% from a baseline level of 15%.

4.3.9 There should be an agreed policy on the further diagnostic investigation of individuals with a positive result and on the choices available to those individuals
There are a number of screening and confirmatory algorithms which could be adopted. A feasible approach to antenatal screening might involve HPA-1a typing at the initial antenatal booking visit to identify HPA-1a-negative women. No additional blood sample would be required, as HPA-1a typing could be carried out on the sample already taken routinely for blood grouping and antibody screening at booking for antenatal care at 10–16 weeks’ gestation. As the management protocol discussed below (Section 4.3.10) proposes that no antenatal intervention would be considered until the third trimester, testing for anti-HPA-1a would not be necessary until 28 weeks, when a sample for further red cell antibody testing is routinely taken.\textsuperscript{24} Two cohorts of HPA-1a-negative patients would be identified: (1) the non-alloimmunized patients could be considered to be at very low risk for alloimmune thrombocytopenia, and any further intervention (either antenatal or postnatal) would not appear to be justified; and (2) the alloimmunized patients would be considered to be at risk for alloimmune thrombocytopenia. The preferred option for antenatal intervention in women with anti-HPA-1a with no previous history of pregnancies affected by alloimmune thrombocytopenia is not yet clearly identified (Section 4.3.10) and is an area requiring further research.

4.3.10 There should be an effective treatment or intervention for patients identified through early detection
Along with a lack of predictors of severe disease, the lack of consistently effective antenatal therapy for alloimmune thrombocytopenia is a major barrier to routine
antenatal screening. There is considerable experience in the antenatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia where there has been a previously affected pregnancy, but the optimal management still remains controversial. Therapeutic options are described in detail elsewhere (Section 14.3) and are considered here only briefly. The main options are maternal administration of intravenous immunoglobulin and fetal platelet transfusions; early Caesarean section alone is not considered to be effective in preventing antenatal or perinatal haemorrhage. For both approaches to antenatal management, fetal blood sampling is required for the initial assessment of the fetal platelet count, usually at 20–22 weeks’ gestation, and for the monitoring of the effectiveness of treatment.

In one North American study, maternal administration of intravenous immunoglobulin was reported to be successful with no instances of intracerebral haemorrhage and most, but not all, infants achieved a platelet count of greater than $30 \times 10^9/l$ at the end of pregnancy. The addition of steroids did not add to the effect of intravenous immunoglobulin. However, other studies have reported intracerebral haemorrhage during maternal treatment with intravenous immunoglobulin, and a group of European centres treating 37 pregnancies only found success with the use of maternal intravenous immunoglobulin in seven (26%) of 27 cases, and steroids in one (10%) of 10.

It is difficult to understand why there is such an apparent difference in the success of maternal administration of intravenous immunoglobulin between North America and Europe. Relevant factors may include the methods used for assessing the success of treatment and the dose, timing and type of intravenous immunoglobulin used. This is discussed in more detail elsewhere (Section 14.3.2.2). The selection of cases may also be important, and it has been suggested that therapeutic failures occur more frequently in severe cases. The direct injection of IgG to the fetus by cordocentesis was successful in raising the fetal platelet count in one case. However, this method of administering intravenous immunoglobulin has all the risks of fetal blood sampling discussed above, and was not found to be effective by another group.

A number of studies have shown the value of platelet transfusions given by cordocentesis in raising the platelet count, but the platelet count is raised for only a few days. A single predelivery transfusion may protect against bleeding at the time of delivery, but the fetus remains at risk of spontaneous intracerebral haemorrhage earlier in pregnancy. Weekly in utero platelet transfusions have been shown to be effective in preventing intracerebral haemorrhage in severe cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia. In utero platelet transfusions are described in detail elsewhere (Section 14.3.3).

For pregnancies in HPA-1a-alloimmunized women without a past history of thrombocytopenia, the decision about appropriate antenatal intervention and its
timing are problematic. Fetal blood sampling would be required to determine the fetal platelet count and thus the need for treatment. It is likely that a compromise between minimizing the risks of fetal blood sampling and carrying out the procedure early enough to allow effective antenatal treatment in severe cases could be achieved by performing fetal blood sampling at around 30 weeks’ gestation.

4.3.11 There should be agreed evidence-based policies covering which individuals should be offered treatment and the appropriate treatment to be offered

As already discussed, there are no evidence-based policies for determining which women with anti-HPA-1a, but without a previous history of affected pregnancies, should be offered treatment, and which should not. Further research is required to identify factors predictive of severe disease and it may be necessary to carry out further large-scale antenatal screening studies to collect the relevant clinical material and to confirm the association of the suspected factor with clinical severity. Likewise, the optimal antenatal treatment is unknown, and further studies are also required in this field.

4.3.12 Clinical management of the condition and patient outcomes should be optimized by all health providers prior to participation in a screening programme

As discussed above, there is as yet no consensus on the optimal treatment for alloimmune thrombocytopenia. Therapeutic options are discussed in detail elsewhere (Section 14.3).

4.4 The cost-effectiveness of a screening programme

There have been no randomized controlled trials to show that antenatal screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia can reduce morbidity or mortality or that the benefit of the screening programme outweighs the potential for physical and psychological harm. A major problem in the performance of such a trial is the low incidence of intracerebral haemorrhage. An exhaustively large number of women would have to be screened to demonstrate a benefit from intervention. It has been estimated that a randomized study comparing conservative management with invasive therapy with intracerebral haemorrhage as the primary endpoint would require one million pregnancies to be screened (W Murphy, personal communication). Such a study could be carried out as a European initiative and there have been some preliminary discussions about its feasibility between European centres interested in this field. It may well be worth the effort and cost if a definitive answer can be obtained as to whether prevention of intracerebral haemorrhage by screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia is not only possible, but cost-effective.
4.5 Conclusions
This chapter has reviewed the epidemiology of alloimmune thrombocytopenia and has examined the feasibility of introducing a screening programme against the criteria set by the UK’s National Screening Committee. Antenatal haemorrhage due to alloimmune thrombocytopenia can produce devastating clinical effects, but it may be argued that knowledge about alloimmune thrombocytopenia is as yet insufficient to justify the introduction of an antenatal screening programme. Research is required in several areas including the clinical outcome of affected cases, the identification of factors useful for predicting severe disease and the preferred option for antenatal intervention in women with anti-HPA-1a but no previous history of affected pregnancies.

Acknowledgements
The authors acknowledge the contribution of Dr WG Murphy (Dublin), Dr WH Ouwehand (Cambridge) and Professor CH Rodeck (University College, London) in extensive discussions on the subject of antenatal screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

4.6 References
Epidemiology and screening for thrombocytopenia

8 L'Abbe D, Tremblay L, Goldman M, Decary F & Chartrand P (1992). Alloimmunization to platelet antigen HPA-1a (Zwa): association with HLA-DRw52a is not 100%. Transfusion Medicine, 2, 251.


Principles of antibody-mediated immune suppression and the prevention of maternal RhD alloimmunization

Belinda Kumpel
Bristol Institute for Transfusion Sciences, Bristol, UK

The first evidence that passively administered antibody could suppress the immune response to the corresponding antigen was documented a century ago. Since then, the administration of anti-D to D-negative individuals has become firmly established as an effective measure to prevent alloimmunization to D. Anti-D prophylaxis is the most widespread clinical application of specific antibody-mediated immune suppression. This chapter first reviews the historical background and some of the early experimental and clinical studies on the prevention of RhD alloimmunization. The essential characteristics and possible theories to explain the mechanism of action of prophylactic anti-D are then discussed. Finally, progress made towards the introduction of monoclonal anti-D is reviewed.

5.1 Haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn due to anti-D

About 50 years ago, there were at least 1000 neonatal deaths a year in England and Wales from HDFN, an incidence of approximately 150 per 100000 births. At a large hospital – Queen Charlotte’s in London – between 1946 and 1949, the neonatal death rate was even higher, at 3.2 per 1000. Stillbirths represented an additional 30% of cases. In the early 1940s in Manitoba, Canada, 10% of perinatal deaths were due to HDFN and the death rate of affected babies was 40%. Improved obstetric and neonatal care resulted in a 10-fold reduction in the number of deaths, first as a result of the introduction of neonatal exchange transfusion, then premature delivery and, finally, as a result of intrauterine transfusion, either intraperitoneally or, more recently, by ultrasound-guided delivery into the umbilical cord vessels.

Anti-D is the most frequent cause of HDFN and there are several reasons for this. The D antigen is the most immunogenic blood group, probably because D-negative red cells lack the entire D polypeptide, due to deletion of the \textit{RHD} gene (Section 7.3.1). The RhD and RhCE polypeptides are integral membrane proteins with 12 membrane-spanning regions and six extracellular loops which, unusually, are not
glycosylated. The Rh proteins are expressed solely on human erythroid cells, so maternal alloantibodies may localize on fetal red cells. The D antigen is relatively well expressed, with 10000–20000 antigen sites on heterozygous D-positive cells. D is the most common blood group incompatibility with the potential to cause severe HDFN; the gene frequency of RHD in Caucasians results in D-negative women carrying D-positive fetuses in about 10% of pregnancies. In addition, the D polypeptide has a ‘helper’ function for inducing immunity to other blood group antigens.

5.2 Experimental studies on the prevention of RhD immunization

In the 1950s, Chown and Gunson observed the occurrence of fetal cells in maternal blood after the delivery of anaemic infants resulting from massive fetomaternal haemorrhage. They suggested that this might cause the immunization of a D-negative woman by her D-positive fetus. In 1960, in England and the USA, two groups of investigators independently thought that administration of passive anti-D might prevent immunization to D-positive cells. The rationales for their experimental and clinical studies were different.

In Liverpool, Finn et al. suggested that anti-D could be given to D-negative women after delivery to destroy fetal D-positive cells in ABO compatible pregnancies. This approach was taken because it was known that the incidence of D immunization and HDFN was less in ABO incompatible pregnancies. Experimentally, it had been found that 71% of D-negative subjects given 2.5 ml ABO compatible D-positive blood formed anti-D, whereas only 16% became immunized with ABO incompatible D-positive blood. The use of plasma containing mainly IgM anti-D was tested first, to simulate the effect of IgM anti-A and anti-B in protecting against immunization by causing the rapid intravascular destruction of incompatible cells. It was observed that the proportion of D-negative subjects who became immunized to D-positive blood was greater in the group given IgM anti-D (eight of 13) compared with the control group (one of 11). The survival of the D-positive cells was somewhat reduced in recipients of the plasma (half-life [t_{50%}], 7 days) compared with the controls (t_{50%}, 25 days). They concluded that IgM anti-D might have enhanced immunization rather than suppressed it.

At that time, it was known that IgG anti-D mediated rapid clearance of D-positive cells to the spleen, whereas ABO incompatible cells accumulated in the liver or were destroyed intravascularly. Further, it had been shown that ABO compatible cells coated in vitro with IgG anti-D were not immunogenic, whereas 50% of subjects responded to unsensitized cells, indicating that the passive anti-D had suppressed the anti-D response. In a similar experiment, IgG anti-A was found not to confer protection, so IgG anti-D appeared to be more suppressive than
anti-A. These results led to the next experiments in Liverpool. Plasma containing high-titre IgG anti-D was infused after D-positive blood, resulting in reduced survival of the cells; immunization was prevented when 95% of the cells were cleared within 24 hours, but, if insufficient passive anti-D was given then there was neither rapid clearance nor suppression of the anti-D response.16

Simultaneously, trials were being undertaken in New York and New Jersey, USA. The rationale for these experiments was that administration of antisera was known to suppress the antibody response to ox red cells injected into rabbits1 and to diphtheria toxin in guinea pigs.20 Instead of plasma, anti-D immunoglobulin (Cohn fraction II) was used as it was known not to transmit hepatitis and the processing produced a high concentration of IgG, free of IgM, that could be injected intramuscularly.21 Two studies demonstrated suppression with these high-titre preparations, either when 5ml was given 24 hours before 2ml D-positive cells, repeated at 5-monthly intervals, or when 4ml was given 72 hours after a single dose of 10ml D-positive blood. None of four or 14 D-negative subjects was immunized in the two studies, respectively, compared with four of five and six of 13 controls not given anti-D.21

At about the same time, Clarke et al. found that 5ml anti-D immunoglobulin given i.m. cleared D-positive cells more rapidly than 50ml plasma given i.v., and this group then immediately discontinued the use of plasma.16 Similar results were reported by German workers.22 Soon, Hughes-Jones23 devised a method for assaying the concentration and equilibrium constant of anti-D in the immunoglobulin preparations, which was important for determining the clinical dose.

Immediately after the successful results of these early experiments in male volunteers (using policemen in Liverpool and prisoners in the USA), clinical trials were initiated in the spring of 1964 on women after delivery.

5.3 Clinical studies on the efficacy of RhD prophylaxis

Woodrow et al. observed that one-third of women had a detectable fetomaternal haemorrhage at delivery and that there was an increased incidence of immunization with increasing volume of the haemorrhage.24 They reasoned that a large fetomaternal haemorrhage at delivery was the most common immunizing event. In order to provide data quickly on the effect of passive anti-D, they selected ‘high risk’ women for a clinical trial. These women were primiparae (i.e. women not previously immunized by pregnancy) who had delivered ABO compatible D-positive infants and with a fetomaternal haemorrhage in excess of 0.25ml, as determined by the Kleihauer test (Section 6.3.1).25 Whereas three of eight women had immune anti-D three months after delivery, none of six injected with 1000µg anti-D immunoglobulin within 36 hours of delivery was immunized.24 This study was extended,
with similar results; 24% of the control group were immunized at 6 months’ post-delivery, but only 4% (three doubtful cases) after treatment.

At the same time, a study in New York on all D-negative women delivering ABO compatible D-positive infants showed that none (of 300) were immunized 6 months’ postpartum after treatment with 5000 μg anti-D (RhoGAM), but 8% (19 of 227) of untreated women developed immune anti-D. A larger group was then given 300 μg anti-D, with one of 781 becoming immunized compared with 32 (6%) of 499 untreated patients, which demonstrated the effectiveness of the smaller dose.

In Winnipeg, Canada, 100–300 μg anti-D immunoglobulin given to women either postnatally or antenatally protected them from immunization. In the Netherlands, 333 D-negative women were given 250 μg anti-D within 24 hours of delivery, with only 0.9% of women (all with fetomaternal haemorrhages greater than 50 ml) becoming immunized at 4–6 months, compared with 5% of controls without prophylactic anti-D.

On the basis of these and other trials undertaken during this time, anti-D immunoglobulin was licensed in 1968. RhD prophylaxis was introduced in Australia and Germany in 1967, in the UK for high-risk patients in 1968 and for routine use in 1969.

5.3.1 Dose of anti-D

In the mid 1960s, it was becoming apparent that supplies of anti-D might limit the use of prophylaxis unless an effective small dose could be determined, with or without the use of the Kleihauer test to detect a large fetomaternal haemorrhage which would require a larger dose. Several studies were carried out to determine the optimum dose.

D-negative male volunteers given 2 ml of ABO compatible D-positive cord blood were protected with either 50 μg or 250 μg anti-D, whereas 50% of subjects responded to cells alone. Small doses of anti-D (0–40 μg) were given to D-negative subjects 72 hours after 5 ml of D-positive blood (about 2 ml cells); there was no evidence of suppression with any dose, but there was a greater proportion of responders in the group given 10 μg and, unusually, these subjects initially formed IgM anti-D. Then, in a larger study, the volume of cells was varied, from 11.6 ml to 37.5 ml, with a constant dose of anti-D (267 μg IgG anti-D i.m.) and it was deduced that a dose in the ratio of 20 μg to 1 ml cells would suppress the anti-D response. Thus, although in their first study a ratio of 20:1 was not protective with a 40 μg dose, this ratio was protective with a larger dose in the second study.

In Canada, 145 μg, 290 μg or 435 μg anti-D was given to unselected D-negative women within 72 hours of delivery of ABO compatible D-positive infants, with complete protection at the higher dose and 0.4–0.8% failures at the lower doses. It
was noted that no fetal cells were observed in the blood of these unprotected women at delivery, suggesting that antenatal immunization may have occurred in these cases.\textsuperscript{32}

‘Low-risk’ women in Liverpool – those with a fetomaternal haemorrhage after delivery of less than 0.2 ml ABO compatible D-positive blood – were given 200\,\mu g anti-D, with 90\% protection when assessed for immune anti-D 6 months after delivery (0.36\% versus 3.6\% immunization rate in the treated versus control groups) and 82\% protection at the end of the subsequent pregnancy (1.8\% versus 10.2\%, respectively). As above, it was also suggested that failures may have been due to a primary immune response (Section 1.1.1) occurring antenatally, with clearance of fetal cells by the low levels of immune anti-D, which was undetectable serologically.\textsuperscript{33}

A study set up by the Medical Research Council in 1967 compared 20\,\mu g, 50\,\mu g, 100\,\mu g and 200\,\mu g anti-D given to almost 2000 D-negative primiparae without immune anti-D within 36 hours of delivery of an ABO compatible D-positive baby.\textsuperscript{34} At 6 months, there was a trend towards an increasing frequency of failures as the dose decreased, but failures were similar in all groups at the end of the next pregnancy (1.5\%, 1.1\%, 1.5\% and 2.9\% respectively). The overall protection rate was about 90\%. The lowest dose was considered suboptimal, and 100\,\mu g (500IU) has since been used in the UK for routine postnatal prophylaxis (Section 6.2.2. and 6.4).

The dose required to suppress immunization to large fetomaternal haemorrhage (over 100 ml) was less easily defined. Women were not protected at ratios of less than 8.5\,\mu g anti-D per ml fetal cells\textsuperscript{35,36} but immunization was prevented with 10\,\mu g per ml,\textsuperscript{37} 12\,\mu g per ml,\textsuperscript{38} 18\,\mu g per ml\textsuperscript{39} or 20\,\mu g per ml.\textsuperscript{40,41} Based mainly on the data of Pollack et al., a ‘rule of thumb’ ratio of 25\,\mu g anti-D per ml fetal cells has been adopted to calculate the extra dose required to protect against immunization by a fetomaternal haemorrhage greater than 4 ml (Section 6.4.6).\textsuperscript{31}

5.3.2 The current situation

For the last 30 years in the UK, D-negative women have received anti-D after delivery of a D-positive infant. Thus, 10\% of all conﬁnements receive treatment. Over the 15-year period of 1977–1992, the death rate from HDFN due to anti-D in the UK dropped over 10-fold, from 18.4 to 1.3 per 100000 live births, and it is now a rare disease.\textsuperscript{42} The rate of immunization has also dropped, but to a lesser extent, due to some failures of RhD prophylaxis, which are discussed in detail elsewhere (Section 6.2.4). Antenatal prophylaxis is desirable, but has not yet been universally achieved. Over the same period, the death rate due to other alloantibodies (mainly anti-c and anti-K) remained constant, at an average 3.6 per 100000.\textsuperscript{42} Appropriate prophylaxis for these cases is not available.
5.4 Characteristics and requirements of RhD prophylaxis

5.4.1 Ratio of antibody to antigen required for suppression

A review of the data by Mollison concluded that a critical amount of anti-D is required for suppression and that the ratio of the dose of anti-D to volume of red cells may vary. A dose of $10 \mu g/\text{ml}$ of cells was insufficient for small volumes of cells (0.5 ml) and may even have led to augmentation, but doses using this ratio were suppressive for fetomaternal haemorrhages greater than 50 ml cells. The reason that the effectiveness of a constant ratio of anti-D per volume of cells varies may be that, as the volume of cells and dose of antibody rise, the percentage of D antigen sites bound by anti-D increases. This was calculated to range from 2% ($20 \mu g$ anti-D and 1 ml cells) to 7.8% ($100 \mu g$ anti-D and 5 ml cells) to 40% ($200 \mu g$ anti-D and 1000 ml cells). The percentage of anti-D bound also increases, although only a small proportion of anti-D in the plasma is bound to the cells. For example, 18.7% of a 100 $\mu g$ dose of polyclonal anti-D will be bound to 5 ml cells. It can be estimated from the law of mass action that saturation of D antigen sites with passive anti-D will not occur in clinical practice. In addition to the dose, the equilibrium constant (binding affinity) of the anti-D will determine the amount bound to cells, with high affinity antibodies having enhanced biological effectiveness, especially at low doses. The actual number of molecules of passively administered anti-D bound to cells was determined in a clinical study. Relatively high doses of high affinity monoclonal anti-D were given to D-negative volunteers prior to D-positive cells. On average, about 20% of the D antigen sites were occupied with anti-D at equilibrium, or 1500–10 000 IgG anti-D molecules/cell. This suppressed the anti-D immune response. The effectiveness of anti-D-mediated immune suppression may depend on achieving a sufficient density of anti-D molecules bound to the cells. The critical number is about 200–400 IgG anti-D molecules/cell.

5.4.2 Relationship of red cell clearance to antibody-mediated immune suppression

Cells coated with IgG anti-D are rapidly removed from the circulation and sequestered in the spleen. The rate of clearance is related to the level of red cell coating with anti-D. With respect to the protective effect afforded by prophylactic anti-D, it appears that small volumes of transfused cells (less than 1 ml) must be completely cleared within 5 days for effective suppression. However, large volumes (over 75 ml of transfused blood or over 10 ml fetomaternal haemorrhage) need not necessarily be entirely removed from the circulation, provided that the majority of cells have been removed by 5–6 days, which requires a sufficient dose of anti-D, as discussed above.
5.4.3 Protection afforded by ABO antibodies
Cells coated with anti-A or anti-B are removed to the liver, if complement-mediated haemolysis does not occur intravascularly. Unlike the spleen, the liver does not participate in immune responses. IgG anti-A or anti-B in group O women appears to be more effective at preventing anti-D immunization than IgM antibodies in group A or B women. ABO incompatibility may prevent a primary but not a secondary anti-D response.

5.4.4 Role of the spleen in RhD prophylaxis
The survival of cells coated with IgG anti-D was prolonged in a splenectomized patient (t50%, 280 minutes) compared with a normal subject (t50%, 30 minutes) and the cells were removed predominantly to the liver in the absence of the spleen. Another splenectomized D-negative patient was given 4 ml D-positive cells and 300 μg anti-D iv, but, despite the large ‘suppressive’ dose of anti-D, the cells were cleared very slowly (t50%, 14.5 days) and the patient developed immune anti-D by 4 months (study of R Weitzel, reported by Mollison). Thus, the spleen would appear to be involved in anti-D-mediated immune suppression. It is uncertain at which site the anti-D immune response took place in this patient, but the lymph nodes would be the most likely site.

5.4.5 Timing of passive anti-D
In early clinical trials, a time limit of 36 hours after delivery was initially set for administration of anti-D, but 72 hours was later used successfully because this timing was dictated by the prison visiting schedules in the early experiments in the USA. In one study, no suppression was obtained when 100 μg anti-D was given 13 days after 1 ml cells. In another study, prophylactic anti-D was protective when given 7 days before red cells. The rationale for antenatal prophylaxis is to maintain sufficient anti-D in the patient’s circulation for at least 6 weeks so that it may mediate clearance of fetal D-positive cells and immune suppression if a fetomaternal haemorrhage occurs. The time limit of 72 hours after delivery has been accepted, although it is also recommended that anti-D should not be withheld if this time limit is exceeded, as it may well still give protection. It may be that passive anti-D should be given before senescent (aged) D-positive cells are removed from the circulation by natural antibodies, i.e. before the D antigen can become immunogenic.

5.4.6 Time of detection of anti-D response
Immune anti-D has not been detected earlier than 4 weeks after injection of D-positive red cells and usually develops 5–20 weeks later. Normally, only IgG is evident serologically, although IgM is occasionally found, especially after the augmentation caused by administering a small dose of anti-D. The development of
anti-D generally precedes that of other blood group antibodies such as anti-C, -E or -K. Antibody levels may vary widely and, in some subjects, when anti-D is not detectable serologically, evidence of immunization is obtained by the brisk development of anti-D 2–4 weeks after challenge with D-positive red cells, suggesting a secondary response (Section 1.1.1).

5.4.7 Effect of passive anti-D on subsequent immunization
There are limited experimental data suggesting that administered anti-D exerts a suppressive effect on D immunization for some months. In male subjects given four injections of D-positive cells each with anti-D im, no subjects were immunized after the first subsequent unprotected 5 ml red cell challenge, although 31% became immunized following a second unprotected challenge of 5 ml blood 7 months later. In a different study, only three of eight individuals given anti-D 2–4 days after two injections of D-positive red cells were immunized by two doses of 10 ml D-positive red cells given 16 and 22 months later; this is about one-half the expected number of responders. A similar effect was observed in male subjects given 5–10 μg anti-D before the first injection of D-positive red cells; only two of six responded to the next unprotected challenge compared with four of five responders in the control group not given anti-D.

5.4.8 Effect of passive anti-D on an established primary response
Clinical studies have shown that antenatal and postnatal RhD prophylaxis is ineffective if anti-D is already present. Confirmation that primary RhD immunization cannot be reversed by prophylactic anti-D was obtained by de Silva et al. Volunteers with low levels of immune anti-D were given D-positive cells with or without anti-D, and similar secondary responses were elicited in both groups.

5.4.9 Role of anti-D Fc fragments
F(ab')2 fragments of IgG anti-D did not clear D-positive cells from the circulation of volunteers and, as clearance is required for anti-D mediated immune suppression, F(ab')2 fragments would presumably not be effective for RhD prophylaxis. As IgM anti-D did not mediate immune suppression, the Fc region of IgG is presumably essential.

5.4.10 Epitope specificity
One experiment has been performed to determine the specificity of suppression. D-negative K-negative subjects were given 1 ml D-positive K-positive cells with or without 13–14 μg IgG anti-K, which mediated rapid clearance of the cells to the spleen. One of the 31 treated subjects developed anti-D compared with 11 of the 31 controls, one of whom also produced anti-K. Thus, passive anti-K suppressed
the anti-D response, suggesting that the antibody-mediated immune suppression was particle (cell) specific but not epitope specific.

5.5 Theories of the mechanism of action of prophylactic anti-D

Different experimental models have been used to investigate the mechanism of antibody-mediated immune suppression, but none of the animal models currently developed exactly mimics the human situation. Moreover, there may be many different ways by which immune responses are suppressed by the administration of specific antibody, depending on the molecular and cellular events involved in each case.

The exact mechanism by which administered anti-D suppresses the specific anti-D response after exposure to D-positive cells is not known. There are several possibilities, discussed below and illustrated in Figure 5.1. Taking into account the characteristics of RhD prophylaxis and research in other areas of immunology, it would appear that the most likely mode of action involves downregulation of specific B cells, although other mechanisms are conceivable.

5.5.1 Inhibition of B cells by crosslinking heterologous receptors

B cells express specific antigen receptors comprising clonally derived surface immunoglobulin (Section 1.1.1). The cytoplasmic domains of these antigen receptors contain ‘immuno-receptor tyrosine-based activation motifs’\(^6\).\(^4\) Clustering or aggregation of B cell antigen receptors by a multivalent antigen such as D initiates the phosphorylation of tyrosine residues within these signalling motifs. This in turn leads to a cascade of molecular events resulting in B cell activation, proliferation and secretion of antigen-specific antibodies (Figure 5.1a). Many cell surface receptors or their associated subunits with activatory functions contain immuno-receptor tyrosine-based activation motifs. These include the B and T cell antigen receptors and several Fc receptors.\(^6\)\(^5\)–\(^6\)\(^7\)

Whereas B cell activation, proliferation and antibody secretion may also be stimulated by F(ab’\(^2\)) anti-Ig, they are inhibited by whole anti-Ig.\(^6\)\(^8\)–\(^7\)\(^2\) Inhibition requires both that the Fc portions of immunoglobulin bind Fc receptors (Fc\(\gamma\) receptor IIb) on B cells and that the B cell antigen receptors and Fc\(\gamma\) receptor IIb are co-ligated. Crosslinking of Fc\(\gamma\) receptor IIb alone does not inhibit B cell antigen receptor-mediated activation.\(^6\)\(^9\)–\(^7\)\(^2\) Fc\(\gamma\) receptor IIb has, in common with other inhibitory receptors, a tyrosine-based inhibitory motif in the cytoplasmic tail.\(^7\)\(^3\),\(^7\)\(^4\) This has similarities to the tyrosine-based activation motif except that phosphorylation confers an inhibitory signal.\(^7\)\(^5\)–\(^7\)\(^7\) The inhibitory signals generated by crosslinking Fc\(\gamma\) receptor IIb with the B cell antigen receptors override the activatory signal from B cell antigen receptor aggregation alone\(^7\)\(^5\) and may lead to apoptotic
Figure 5.1 Diagrammatic representation of possible mechanisms of antibody-mediated immune suppression.
B cell death. Crosslinking of more than four Fcγ receptor IIb on a B cell may be necessary to generate the inhibitory signal. The molecular events in inhibitory signalling by B cell Fcγ receptor IIb have been reviewed elsewhere.

The known characteristics of RhD prophylaxis (Section 5.4) are consistent with inhibition of antigen (D)-specific B cells before an immune response has become established. A diagram of the cellular and molecular interactions (Figure 5.1b) illustrates how Fc (IgG) is required, but that the suppression is cell specific (Section 5.4.10) and not epitope specific. Furthermore, intact red cells are required for the interaction with B cells. It is postulated that co-aggregation of multiple B cell antigen receptors and Fcγ receptor IIb occurs after B cell receptors have bound vacant D antigen sites and Fcγ receptor IIb has ligated anti-D bound to the red cells. It is likely that a certain density of IgG anti-D must be present on the red cells for effective Fcγ receptor IIb–B cell receptor crosslinking to occur; if there is insufficient anti-D, activation of the B cell antigen receptors alone may follow.

In reality, it is possible that this theory will never be adequately tested due to the requirement to study D-reactive immature or primed B cells from the spleen or lymph nodes of a subject in whom anti-D-mediated immunosuppression is taking place. However, none of the other possible mechanisms of action (described below) fulfils all the characteristics of RhD prophylaxis.

5.5.2 Anti-idiotypic antibodies

Anti-idiotypic antibodies are directed against the antigen-binding site of specific antibodies generated during an immune response. It has been postulated that anti-idiotypic antibodies may have a regulatory role in the maintenance of immune responses. If present and directed against anti-D, they could inhibit B cells by cross-linking D-specific B cell antigen receptors and Fcγ receptor IIb in a manner similar to that involved in the downregulation induced by anti-Ig antibodies (Figure 5.1c). However, monovalent anti-idiotypic antibodies probably deliver only weak inhibitory signals. It was found recently that greater co-aggregation (superclustering) of B cell antigen receptors and Fcγ receptor IIb was obtained with anti-idiotypic antibodies together with polyvalent antigen. This combination led to enhanced negative signalling. Thus, D-positive red cells might be required to generate these multiple antigen–B cell receptor interactions for anti-idiotypic antibodies to be suppressive (not shown in Figure 5.1c). There are, however, three observations which mitigate against the theory that anti-idiotypic antibodies are operative in RhD prophylaxis. First, anti-idiotypic antibodies are highly specific, and, if present in the anti-D immunoglobulin would be expected to bind the anti-D and form immune complexes, neutralizing the anti-D. This does not occur. Second, anti-idiotypic antibodies are not present in monoclonal anti-D which was found
to be suppressive and they also were not detected in serum samples taken subsequently from the subjects given either monoclonal or polyclonal anti-D. Finally, inhibition of anti-D responses by anti-K could not occur via an anti-idiotypic antibody-mediated mechanism.

### 5.5.3 Masking of antigen sites

This theory supposes that, if sufficient D antigen sites are bound by anti-D, the antigen receptors on D-specific B cells are prevented from interacting with the immunizing antigen (Figure 5.1d). This possibility is unlikely because most of the D antigen sites are not occupied by anti-D. Moreover, it is unlikely that anti-K could mask all the D antigen sites due to the scarcity of K antigen sites (2500–5000 per cell) compared with D sites (10000–40000 per cell) and the differing topography of the antigens.

### 5.5.4 Clearance and destruction of D-positive red cells

Small volumes of D-positive cells coated with passive IgG anti-D are rapidly removed from the circulation to the spleen, through interactions with macrophages via their Fcγ receptors (Figure 5.1e). In this situation, sometimes termed antigen deviation, it is suggested that the immunizing antigen is directed away from sites of antigen recognition, resulting in the lack of an anti-D response. Macrophages are relatively poor antigen-presenting cells and are probably only capable of providing a T cell stimulus during a secondary and not a primary immune response (Section 1.1.1). However, after large volumes of D-positive cells are transfused, and if a sufficiently large dose of IgG anti-D is given, immunosuppression does occur even though not all the D-positive cells are rapidly cleared. Thus, there is not a direct relationship between the rate of red cell clearance and suppression of the anti-D response. The spleen and lymph nodes are sites of both antibody formation and cell destruction, so any theory of antigen deviation by passive IgG anti-D must accommodate this dichotomy. The theory of clearance and destruction of antigens on red cells would, however, be compatible with the prevention of anti-D responses by anti-K. With ABO incompatibility, deviation of red cell antigens away from the main immunogenic sites may well occur, as the cells are either lysed intravascularly or phagocytosed by Kupffer cells in the liver, with subsequent lysosomal degradation of the antigen.

### 5.6 Development of monoclonal anti-D for RhD prophylaxis

The use of human monoclonal anti-D instead of plasma-derived anti-D immunoglobulin offers many attractions. There would be an unlimited supply which could meet the demand for antenatal prophylaxis and, if required, larger doses.
Monoclonal anti-D would be specific, consistent and with a known product profile, which has not always been the case with polyclonal anti-D. In addition, provision of plasma with high-titre anti-D requires the cooperation of D-positive donors to provide accredited D-positive red cells and the availability of D-negative donors who are prepared to be periodically boosted with antigen and plasmapheresed regularly.

5.6.1 Production of monoclonal anti-D

With the advent of hybridoma technology, attempts were first made to produce murine anti-D, but without success. The mouse immune system does not appear to recognize the D antigen. However, since the early 1980s, there have been at least 25 publications documenting the production of human monoclonal anti-D. Usually, the source material was peripheral blood taken from recently immunized donors. B cells were generally immortalized with Epstein–Barr virus to form B-lymphoblastoid cell lines which were then directly cloned or fused with a myeloma cell line before cloning the resultant heterohybridoma. Mouse myelomas have generally been used as fusion partners. In some cases, B cells were fused without immortalization with Epstein–Barr virus. Some workers have selected high affinity anti-D-producing B cell lines by rosetting B cells or B-lymphoblastoid cells with D-positive red cells. The strategies used for producing monoclonal anti-D have been reviewed elsewhere.

Anti-D is almost always restricted to IgG1 and IgG3, with IgG1 predominating in anti-D immunoglobulin. Two monoclonal anti-Ds, BRAD-3 (IgG3) and BRAD-5 (IgG1), produced from Epstein–Barr virus-transformed B cell lines in Bristol, England, have been selected for clinical studies on the basis of their high affinity, common epitope specificity for the D antigen, high cell growth rate and stable antibody secretion. The glycosylation of these completely human antibodies is similar to that of human serum IgG, although with a slightly greater content of galactose which may be advantageous for their functional activity. Antibodies produced from human–mouse hybridomas may contain nonhuman sugars and sequences.

5.6.2 Half-lives of monoclonal anti-D

In D-negative subjects, BRAD-3 and BRAD-5 had half-lives of 10.2 and 22.2 days, respectively, which were slightly longer than those documented for iodinated myeloma proteins but comparable to other monoclonal IgG1 and IgG3 anti-Ds produced by heterohybridomas. The half-life of polyclonal anti-D was 15.6 days. Interaction of IgG with FcRn (Section 1.2) and subsequent protection from lysosomal catabolism is thought to be the mechanism whereby plasma levels of IgG are maintained, as predicted by Brambell et al. in 1964.
5.6.3 In vitro functional activity of monoclonal anti-D

Anti-D-coated red cells are removed from the circulation by the spleen following interactions with macrophages via their Fcγ receptors (Section 1.3). For RhD prophylaxis to be effective, the fetal D-positive cells must be rapidly cleared. Therefore, the ability of monoclonal anti-D to mediate clearance of D-positive cells was tested in volunteers. First, in vitro assays of the antibody interactions with Fcγ receptor I and Fcγ receptor IIIa (Section 1.3.1) were carried out, as these effector functions are likely to reflect the in vivo activity of anti-D.

Fcγ receptor I-mediated interactions were tested by observing the binding (rosetting) or phagocytosis of monoclonal anti-D-coated red cells by monocytes. A chemiluminescence assay to measure monocyte metabolism during phagocytosis (Section 8.4.4), as well as an antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity assay to measure the extracellular lysis of red cells (Section 8.4.2), was also used. In general, IgG3 anti-D was more active than IgG1 anti-D.102–105 A synergistic effect was observed in the monocyte chemiluminescence test with blends of IgG1 and IgG3 anti-D.104 IgG2 anti-D was inactive.106

In contrast, assays utilizing Fcγ receptor IIIa on natural killer cells demonstrated that, whereas some antibodies mediated both adherence and haemolysis of red cells, others were far less effective.107,108 Considerable variation was observed between the ability of different monoclonal anti-Ds to mediate haemolysis by natural killer cells, which could not be explained by epitope specificity or Gm allostere.107,109 A correlation was observed between the ability of monoclonal antibodies to mediate haemolysis in natural killer cell-mediated assays and their ability to promote binding of red cells to macrophages within spleen sections, interactions mediated solely by Fcγ receptor IIIa.110 In studies of 45 monoclonal anti-D’s produced in different laboratories, only BRAD-5 was particularly effective in these assays109,111,112 and this antibody was nearly as haemolytic as polyclonal anti-D.92

5.6.4 In vivo red cell clearance mediated by monoclonal anti-D

Some monoclonal anti-Ds have been tested in vivo for their ability to promote the accelerated clearance of D-positive red cells. In some studies, autologous cells have been coated in vitro with anti-D prior to injection and, in others, D-positive cells have been injected into D-negative subjects before or after injection of anti-D. The latter more closely mimics the situation in RhD prophylaxis. Data from six studies, comparing antibody characteristics with their in vitro functional activity and their ability to clear red cells, are presented in Table 5.1.

BRAD-3 was the only monoclonal anti-D which promoted sequestration of presensitized autologous D-positive cells at a rate comparable to polyclonal anti-D.49 With one exception (an antibody called UCHD4), all monoclonals exhibited some activity in this type of study. Experimental conditions and coating levels of the
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Anti-D</th>
<th>IgG subclass (cell line)</th>
<th>FcγRI</th>
<th>FcγRIIIa</th>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Dose of anti-D</th>
<th>Red cell clearance</th>
<th>t_{50%} (h)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>UCH D4</td>
<td>IgG1 (h)</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>D+ → D+</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UCH D4</td>
<td>IgG1 (h)</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>D+ → D−</td>
<td>(150 µg im)</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>FOG-1</td>
<td>IgG1 (hm)</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>D+ → D+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BRAD-3</td>
<td>IgG3 (h)</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>D+ → D+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Polyclonal)</td>
<td>(IgG1,3)</td>
<td>Medium/high</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>D+ → D+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>190/31</td>
<td>IgG1 (hm)</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>D+ → D− (chimp)</td>
<td>(400 µg iv)</td>
<td>↑↑</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P3x229</td>
<td>IgG3 (hm)</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>D+ → D− (chimp)</td>
<td>(400 µg iv)</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>BRAD-3</td>
<td>IgG3 (h)</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>D+ → D−</td>
<td>(300 µg im)</td>
<td>↑↑</td>
<td>12.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BRAD-5</td>
<td>IgG1 (h)</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>D+ → D−</td>
<td>(300 µg im)</td>
<td>↑↑↑</td>
<td>5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polyclonal</td>
<td>IgG1,3</td>
<td>Medium/high</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>D+ → D−</td>
<td>(100 µg im)</td>
<td>↑↑↑</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>G12</td>
<td>IgG1 (hm)</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>D+ → D+</td>
<td></td>
<td>↑↑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G12</td>
<td>IgG1 (hm)</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>D+ → D−</td>
<td>(300 µg iv)</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>48–72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polyclonal</td>
<td>IgG1,3</td>
<td>Medium/high</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>D+ → D−</td>
<td>(150 µg iv)</td>
<td>↑↑↑</td>
<td>~3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>THERAD 19</td>
<td>IgG1 (hm)</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>D+ → D+</td>
<td></td>
<td>↑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THERAD 27</td>
<td>IgG3 (hm)</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>D+ → D+</td>
<td></td>
<td>↑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polyclonal</td>
<td>IgG1,3</td>
<td>Medium/high</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>D+ → D+</td>
<td></td>
<td>↑↑↑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

h = human B cell line; hm = heterohybridoma cell line; chimp = chimpanzee.
antibodies varied between different studies, but, for individual antibodies, clearance rates were related to the amount of anti-D on the red cells.

In D-negative subjects, only BRAD-5 mediated red cell clearance at a comparable rate to polyclonal anti-D. The half-lives of cells were calculated from the time of injection of cells or antibody. The in vivo results reflected the ability of the antibodies to promote red cell lysis by natural killer cells: of the monoclonal antibodies tested in vivo, BRAD-5 was the only antibody to mediate strong Fcγ receptor IIIa interactions, as discussed above.

5.6.5 Suppression of the anti-D response by monoclonal anti-D

Notwithstanding the requirement to promote accelerated red cell clearance, the most important function of prophylactic anti-D is the ability to suppress the immune response to D-positive red cells. There has been only one report of the suppression of RhD immunization by monoclonal anti-D. In the red cell clearance study described above, D-negative male subjects given monoclonal anti-D 2 days before 51Cr-labelled red cells did not become immunized. Subsequently, they were challenged 6 and 9 months later with D-positive cells, and blood samples were taken every 2 weeks and tested for anti-D. Two subjects seroconverted at 10 and 14 weeks after the first unprotected challenge, and three further individuals produced anti-D at 2–4 weeks after the second unprotected challenge. Three had been given BRAD-3 (100 µg or 300 µg), one BRAD-5 (300 µg) and one polyclonal anti-D (100 µg, 500 IU). The slow anti-D response after the first challenge was consistent with a primary anti-D response and the brisk formation of anti-D following the second challenge indicated a secondary response following a primary response with antibody levels below the limits of detection. Although accelerated red cell clearance had been observed with all subjects in this study, one volunteer did not become sensitized following 100 µg BRAD-3 despite a slow rate (t50% of 41 hours) of red cell removal. The responder rate (21%) was rather low. The simultaneous administration of anti-D with the initial dose of red cells may have induced some form of tolerance as discussed earlier (Section 5.4.7). These findings were confirmed in a large multicentre study when 95 D-negative male subjects were given 400 µg of a 1:3 blend of BRAD-3:BRAD-5 24 hours after injection of 5 ml D-positive cells. Further clinical trials with BRAD-3 and BRAD-5 are in progress.

5.7 References

3 Tovey LAD (1992). Towards the conquest of Rh haemolytic disease: Britain’s contribution and the role of serendipity. Transfusion Medicine, 2, 99–109.
9 Rochna E & Hughes-Jones NC (1965). The use of purified $^{125}$I-labelled anti-$\gamma$ globulin in the determination of the number of D antigen sites on red cells of different phenotypes. *Vox Sanguinis*, 10, 675–86.
45 Kumpel BM & Judson PA (1995). Quantification of IgG anti-D bound to D-positive red cells infused into D-negative subjects after intramuscular injection of monoclonal anti-D. Transfusion Medicine, 5, 421–39.
46 Mollison PL & Hughes-Jones NC (1967). Clearance of Rh positive cells by low concentration of Rh antibody. Immunology, 12, 63–73.


95 Kumpel BM, Rademacher TW, Rook GAW, Williams PJ & Wilson IBH (1994). Galactosylation of human IgG monoclonal anti-D produced by EBV-transformed B-lym-
phoblastoid cell lines is dependent on culture method and affects Fc receptor-mediated functional activity. *Human Antibodies and Hybridomas*, 5, 143–51.


100 Ghetie V & Ward ES (1997). FcRn: the MHC class I-related receptor that is more than an IgG transporter. *Immunology Today*, 18, 592–8.


102 Wiener E, Jolliffe VM, Scott HCF et al. (1988). Differences between the activities of human monoclonal IgG1 and IgG3 anti-D antibodies of the Rh blood group system in their abilities to mediate effector functions of monocytes. *Immunology*, 65, 159–63.


Principles of antibody-mediated immune suppression


The clinical application of anti-D prophylaxis

Stan Urbaniak
Scottish National Blood Transfusion Service and University of Aberdeen, Aberdeen, UK

6.1 Epidemiology

6.1.1 Causes and incidence of alloimmunization

Anti-D is still the commonest cause of moderate and severe haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn (HDFN) in the developed world. Alloimmunization after pregnancy with a D-positive baby is not as frequent as might be expected from the predicted incidence of D incompatibility between father and mother (60% of D-negative pregnant women carry a D-positive fetus). There are a number of reasons for this. First, the volume of fetal cells crossing the placenta may be too small to initiate a response. Second, ABO incompatibility between mother and fetus offers some protection. Third, the Rh phenotype of the fetus affects antigenicity. Fourth, some women appear to be better responders to a small antigenic stimulus than others. About 17% of at-risk unprotected women are immunized by an ABO compatible pregnancy. Only 8% develop anti-D in the 6 months following a first pregnancy, but a further 9% develop anti-D early in a subsequent pregnancy, indicating that they had been ‘sensitized’ by the earlier pregnancy.

6.1.2 Ethnic groups

About 15–17% of the UK white population is D negative, and a similar approximation can be made for the Caucasian populations of North America, Europe, Australia and New Zealand. The incidence of D negatives is about 10% in Arabs, about 5% in ethnic blacks, 4–10% in Asian Indians and less than 1% in ethnic Chinese. HDFN associated with anti-D is therefore largely a disease affecting Caucasians, and Caucasians thus form a target for cost-effective preventive prophylaxis programmes. In many parts of the developing world, prophylaxis is incomplete or nonexistent due to the higher priorities placed on other healthcare programmes.

6.1.3 Use of D-negative transfusions for young women

About 90% of D-negative persons will make anti-D if exposed to a sufficient dose of D-positive red cells by transfusion. It is, therefore, best practice to transfuse
only D-negative blood into D-negative recipients, particularly those of childbearing years. Because of the severe consequences of immunization, young women should be given priority in times of shortage of D-negative blood. In cases of accidental transfusion with D-positive blood, steps should be taken to prevent immunization (Section 6.2.8).

6.1.4 Relative importance of anti-D before and after the introduction of anti-D prophylaxis programmes

Prior to the availability of specific measures to manage affected fetuses, HDFN due to anti-D resulted in about one death per 2180 births. After the introduction of exchange transfusion, amniocentesis, intrauterine transfusion, controlled early delivery and anti-D prophylaxis, mortality was reduced to one death per 62,500 births, although the latter is an underestimate due to the failure to register deaths before 28 weeks’ gestation. The introduction of anti-D immunoglobulin prophylaxis resulted in a 90% reduction in alloimmunization, and in a reduction in babies affected by HDFN. As a consequence, other significant alloantibodies such as anti-c or anti-K are seen relatively more frequently; however, in absolute terms, anti-D is still the commonest cause of severe HDFN.

6.2 Prophylaxis programmes

6.2.1 Suppression of the immune response

Although the ‘Rh antigen’ was discovered in 1940 by Landsteiner and Weiner, and the association between HDFN and the presence of anti-Rh (anti-D) was then made, it was not until 1954 that Chown reported that mothers were sensitized by a fetomaternal haemorrhage, and the association was made between fetal red cells and the stimulation of maternal antibodies. This association, and the observation that ABO incompatibility gave partial protection, led to efforts to suppress the immune response by passive administration with plasma containing IgM anti-D. This was not successful and later studies with IgG anti-D immunoglobulin fractionated from plasma showed suppression of the immune response in volunteers deliberately injected with D-positive red cells (Section 5.2). Since fetomaternal haemorrhage had been shown to occur mainly at delivery, two groups in the UK and USA were able to demonstrate in clinical trials that immunization in D-negative women could be suppressed when concentrated anti-D immunoglobulin was given im soon after delivery. In male volunteers, complete suppression could be shown if anti-D was administered up to 72 hours after exposure to D-positive red cells, although partial protection can be shown for some days later. Following on from these initial studies, prophylaxis programmes were introduced in many countries with a standard dose of anti-D immunoglobulin being given, preferably, immedi-
Clinical application of anti-D prophylaxis

ately at the time of delivery of a D-positive baby, and no later than 72 hours afterwards. Early trials showed that 100 μg of anti-D (500IU) given i.m. was as effective as larger doses, and dosage studies indicated that 20 μg of anti-D (100IU) will suppress the immune response to 1 ml of D-positive red cells (packed cells, not whole blood). To give a margin of safety, due to inherent inaccuracies in quantifying anti-D and the size of fetomaternal haemorrhage, the World Health Organisation recommended 25 μg of anti-D (125IU) per ml of D-positive red cells.

A full review of the clinical trials involving anti-D immunoglobulin after childbirth is given in Chapter 5.

6.2.2 Recommendations and guidelines

Many countries have some form of professional guidelines which summarize the occasions on which anti-D immunoglobulin is recommended. In the UK, current practice has been reviewed and two recent guidelines have been published, with essentially the same recommendations. Different doses are conventionally used in different countries for historical reasons. For example, a dose of 300 μg (1500IU) is commonly used in North America, 100 μg (500IU) in the UK, 125 μg in Australia and 200–250 μg (1000–1250IU) in Europe and elsewhere.

The clinical situations in which anti-D immunoglobulin is recommended are detailed in Tables 6.1, 6.2 and 6.3 and consist of all those events during which fetomaternal haemorrhage might occur, and result in alloimmunization. In the UK, the standard prophylaxis regimen is to administer 500IU anti-D immunoglobulin after the birth of a D-positive child, and after significant events during pregnancy after 20 weeks’ gestation. Before 20 weeks, a smaller dose of 250IU is recommended. In some countries (for example, the USA and Australia), the cut-off for the full size dose for events during pregnancy is 12 weeks’ gestation. For all events after 20 weeks, and at delivery, a Kleihauer test (or equivalent) to measure fetal cells should be performed on the maternal blood (Section 6.3), and, if the fetomaternal haemorrhage is more than 4 ml, a larger dose of anti-D immunoglobulin should be given (125IU per 1 ml of fetal red cells). Ideally, anti-D immunoglobulin should be given as soon as possible and not later than 72 hours after the event. If, inadvertently, it has not been given earlier, some protection may be provided up to 13 days after exposure.

A detailed discussion of prophylaxis for bleeding during pregnancy is given elsewhere (Section 6.4 and Table 6.3). In the event of intermittent bleeding during pregnancy, it is important to repeat therapy at 6-weekly intervals as very low levels of passively administered anti-D may enhance antibody formation in the presence of an antigenic stimulus.

Anti-D immunoglobulin cannot reverse the immune response once alloanti-D
Table 6.1 Events following which anti-D immunoglobulin must be given to all D-negative women with no anti-D and/or with antibodies other than anti-D

- Delivery of a D-positive infant* (including by Caesarian section)
- Abortion
- Invasive prenatal diagnosis:
  - amniocentesis
  - chorionic villus sampling
  - fetal blood sampling
- Other intrauterine procedures:
  - insertion of shunts
  - embryo reduction

**Dose:**
before 20 weeks’ gestation → 250 IU (50 μg)
after 20 weeks’ gestation** → 500 IU (100 μg)

**Timing:** as soon as possible, but not later than 72 hours after the event.

Notes:
* also if the D type of the infant has not been determined or is in doubt, and the mother is to be discharged early.
** in conjunction with a Kleihauer or equivalent test to assess the size of any fetomaternal haemorrhage.

Table 6.2 Prophylactic anti-D immunoglobulin should be given following abortions to all D-negative women with no anti-D and/or with antibodies other than anti-D

- Therapeutic termination of pregnancy
- Spontaneous abortion followed by instrumentation
- Spontaneous complete or incomplete abortion after 12 weeks’ gestation
- Threatened abortion before 12 weeks
  - when bleeding is heavy or repeated or is associated with abdominal pain; in particular, if these events occur as gestation approaches 12 weeks
- Threatened abortion after 12 weeks
  - all women are eligible; in addition, when bleeding continues intermittently after 12 weeks’ gestation, anti-D immunoglobulin should be given at approximately 6-weekly intervals, and the size of fetomaternal haemorrhage assessed.
has been produced (Section 5.4.8), but in some cases residual activity from antenatal prophylactic anti-D (see below) may be present in the maternal serum, or weak 'enzyme only' naturally occurring anti-D may be detected. Since these cannot be readily distinguished from immune anti-D, where weak anti-D is detected at delivery, anti-D immunoglobulin should still be administered unless it is clearly demonstrated that the mother is already immunized.

Anti-D immunoglobulin is required in appropriate cases where other alloantibodies (such as anti-c or anti-K) have already been detected during pregnancy.

Current UK guidelines also recommend the use of routine antenatal prophylaxis, with 500IU to be administered at 28 and 34 weeks’ gestation. The standard post-delivery dose of 500IU is always required, in addition, if the baby is D positive.

### 6.2.3 Effectiveness in Caucasian populations

The failure rate of postnatal prophylaxis is remarkably consistent worldwide at 1–2% despite different doses being used, ranging from 500IU in the UK to 1500IU in the USA. The failure rate in the UK has remained relatively constant since the introduction of routine prophylaxis in the early 1970s.

### 6.2.4 Reasons for continued failures

Despite explicit updated guidelines having been in place in the UK for many years, a number of avoidable cases of failure to protect occur each year and several clinical audits have shown that there is room for improvement with current protocols. As many as one-third of the cases of alloimmunization might have been prevented if anti-D immunoglobulin had been given when it should have been. There are various reasons for failure: first, failure to give additional anti-D for larger fetomaternal haemorrhages; second, failure to give anti-D for recognized events leading to

---

Table 6.3 Follow-up of large fetomaternal haemorrhage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Estimation of haemorrhage</th>
<th>Serum/plasma</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No fetal cells</td>
<td>Free anti-D</td>
<td>No further action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No fetal cells</td>
<td>No free anti-D</td>
<td>Give further dose of anti-D. Retest for free anti-D in 48 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal cells present</td>
<td>Free anti-D</td>
<td>Repeat fetomaternal haemorrhage test in 48 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal cells present</td>
<td>No free anti-D</td>
<td>Quantify and give further anti-D Repeat fetomaternal haemorrhage test in 48 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Adapted from British Committee for Standards in Haematology Guidelines.*
fetomaternal haemorrhage; third, injection into fatty tissue rather than muscle (delay in absorption); fourth, delayed administration (over 72 hours); and, fifth, antepartum immunization in the absence of overt causes. The two major causes of failure to protect are an unrecognized large fetomaternal haemorrhage at delivery and an unrecognized fetomaternal haemorrhage which may occur without any obvious cause.

6.2.5 Anti-D immunization during pregnancy

Since as little as 0.1 ml of red cells may initiate an immune response in a good responder, there is ample opportunity for anti-D to appear during pregnancy before delivery, even in the absence of an observed precipitating event. The overall incidence during uneventful first pregnancies reported worldwide is approximately 0.87%. As might be expected from the natural history of spontaneous fetomaternal haemorrhage, anti-D tends to appear towards the end of pregnancy, as a result of repeated challenges of larger volumes of D-positive red cells (Table 6.4).

Analysis of the time when anti-D is first detected in primigravidae clearly shows that, on average, less than 10% of intrapartum alloimmunizations are detectable before 28 weeks’ gestation. The major risk occurs after 28 weeks, with most alloimmunizations detected in the last trimester, when the fetus is fully developed and the fetoplacental volume is greatest. Even these data underestimate the true rate of alloimmunization since some women do not have detectable anti-D in their blood until early in a second pregnancy. The incidence of spontaneous fetomaternal haemorrhage during pregnancy is discussed elsewhere (Section 6.4.3).

As a result of such findings, several workers, but particularly Bowman and colleagues in Canada, have advocated the use of additional anti-D during the course of pregnancy in an attempt to reduce alloimmunization to a minimum.

6.2.6 Antenatal administration of anti-D immunoglobulin

A number of uncontrolled trials have shown that administration of anti-D immunoglobulin during the later stages of pregnancy, starting at 28 weeks’ gestation, can reduce alloimmunization rates, particularly in first pregnancies. While the weight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of anti-D detection during pregnancy</th>
<th>Up to 28 weeks</th>
<th>29 – 36 weeks</th>
<th>37 weeks – term</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14%</td>
<td>38%</td>
<td>48%</td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8%</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>76%</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5%</td>
<td>37%</td>
<td>58%</td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.4 The effect of duration of pregnancy on the occurrence of anti-D
of evidence is considerable in demonstrating a reduction in alloimmunization to about 0.2%, there is only one controlled clinical trial meeting the requirements of the Cochrane review process.\textsuperscript{15,24}

6.2.6.1 Dose and timing of anti-D administration

Based on observations of the incidence of fetomaternal haemorrhage and anti-D alloimmunization during pregnancy, an adequate dose of antepartum anti-D at 28 weeks should prevent the 90% of intrapartum sensitization that occurs as a result of occult fetomaternal haemorrhage after 28 weeks’ gestation. A single dose of 300 $\mu$g anti-D, as used in North America, would in theory result in approximately 20 $\mu$g remaining in the mother at the time of delivery 12 weeks later, assuming a circulating half-life of 21 days for anti-D immunoglobulin. This would be sufficient to neutralize up to 1ml of fetal red cells, but the 1% of women with a fetomaternal haemorrhage of over 1ml at 30–39 weeks would not be protected.\textsuperscript{25} Some women have no detectable anti-D at delivery, probably due to interaction with, and clearance of, fetal red cells from the circulation and Bowman’s current practice is to give additional anti-D to those women who do not have residual anti-D late in pregnancy.

In theory, it is more effective to administer anti-D in divided doses; administration of 500IU at 28 and 34 weeks would result in a slightly higher residual anti-D at term. Evidence for the efficacy for this protocol has been obtained in a study in Yorkshire, England, and in a French randomized controlled study.\textsuperscript{26,27} The administration of two doses of 1500IU (at 28 and 34 weeks) did not appear to be more efficacious than a single dose at 28 weeks.\textsuperscript{28} A lower dose of 250IU at 28 and 34 weeks was not as effective as 500IU and was not recommended.\textsuperscript{29}

Two protocols for antenatal prophylaxis have therefore been shown to be efficacious – a single dose of 1500IU at 28 weeks’ gestation, or a dose of 500IU at 28 weeks and a second dose at 34 weeks. In practice, the observed failure rates of either programme are similar; the divided dose schedule requires less anti-D, but incurs greater costs of administration. In the UK, the two 500IU dose protocol is recommended for women who are not already immunized.\textsuperscript{16,17} Although more cost-effective if restricted to primigravidae (Section 6.5), the view of a Consensus Panel on anti-D prophylaxis was that there was no ethical or economic justification for this, and that antenatal prophylaxis should be offered to all eligible D-negative women if sufficient anti-D was available.\textsuperscript{15}

6.2.6.2 Safety to the fetus

Although up to 10% of anti-D immunoglobulin injected into a pregnant woman may cross the placenta,\textsuperscript{30} and may cause fetal anaemia, even with the largest dose of 1500IU no ill effects have been demonstrated other than a transient positive direct antiglobulin test on fetal cells at delivery.\textsuperscript{25,31} Anaemia or jaundice have not
been demonstrated in several studies.\textsuperscript{26,31–33} Concern about transmission of infectious disease is unfounded, and is considered elsewhere (Section 6.5.2).

6.2.7 Anti-D immunoglobulin use on women with weak D or partial D

The D$^w$ or ‘weak D’ phenotype in most individuals differs from normal D only in having fewer antigenic sites per red cell, and these cells react weakly or variably with different sera containing anti-D (Section 2.5.1). Molecular analysis of weak D phenotypes shows that the majority have altered D proteins resulting in diminished expression of the D antigen.\textsuperscript{34} Such individuals do not make anti-D, and therefore do not require antenatal or postnatal prophylaxis with anti-D immunoglobulin. On the other hand, when a baby is identified as weak D positive, the mother should receive prophylaxis, at the standard dose. Nevertheless, the risk of immunization by weak D in the absence of prophylaxis is very small since current blood grouping reagents identify all but the weakest of partial Ds as D positive. Some weak D phenotypes are, in fact, partial D variants and these individuals can be immunized to form anti-D; however, this is unlikely to be of any clinical significance.

The partial D phenotypes arise from genomic rearrangements of the $RHD$ and $RHCE$ genes (Section 7.3.1) and result in a lack of expression of some of the D epitopes at the surface of the variant red blood cells;\textsuperscript{35} these individuals can make anti-D (which is restricted to reactivity against the missing epitopes); although this must happen rarely given the number of occasions when such ‘incompatible’ transfusions would occur by chance. The commonest partial D phenotype is category D$^{VI}$. It is common practice to use reagents which identify partial D$^{VI}$ women as D negative and therefore eligible for anti-D immunoglobulin prophylaxis in the standard doses, at the usual times. In theory, a partial D$^{VI}$ baby typed as D negative could immunize a D-negative mother, but this must be an extremely rare event.

6.2.8 Anti-D immunoglobulin use after the accidental transfusion of D-positive red cells

6.2.8.1 Red cell transfusions

Inadvertent transfusion of D-positive blood into a D-negative individual will result in anti-D being detected in more than 70\% of cases after infusion of a full donation, with an additional 15–20\% being sensitized and capable of producing anti-D after a further challenge.\textsuperscript{4,5} Anti-D immunoglobulin should be given in sufficient doses, calculated on the amount of red cells transfused, on the basis that 500IU of anti-D immunoglobulin given im will protect against 4ml of D-positive red cells.\textsuperscript{16,17} The standard 500IU vial size may be used for up to 15ml red cells (four vials), but, for larger volumes, it is more convenient and less painful for the patient to use the larger vial sizes (2500IU or 5000IU). If a whole donation has been accidentally transfused, anti-D immunoglobulin prepared for intravenous use (e.g. WinRho-SD) would be the preparation of choice, being almost twice as effective, unit for unit, as the intra-
muscular preparation and achieving immediate high plasma levels of anti-D. If only im product is available, it should be given at more than one site in divided doses, and possibly over 2 or 3 days, depending on the volume to be given. Large volumes of circulating D-positive red cells are most accurately determined by flow cytometry (Section 6.3.2) and should be measured every 48 hours. Further anti-D should be given, based on the residual red cell volume, until all D-positive red cells have disappeared from the circulation. With the administration of such large amounts of anti-D, the patient may experience the symptoms of a mild haemolytic transfusion reaction; not more than 10000IU per day is recommended to avoid reactions. If 2 or more units of incompatible blood have been transfused, consideration should be given to exchange transfusion to reduce the amount of D-positive red cells and the amount of anti-D required (a single volume exchange will achieve a 63% reduction). In such circumstances, protection is not guaranteed despite administration of apparently adequate amounts of anti-D immunoglobulin.

6.2.8.2 Platelet transfusions

When platelet transfusions are given to D-negative women of childbearing years by choice, they should be D negative. Although the immune system may be suppressed by chemotherapy in the majority of haematological patients, cases of alloimmunization to D have been described. If D-positive platelets have to be used in fertile women, anti-D immunoglobulin should be given to prevent immunization by the small amount of red cells that may be present in the platelet concentrates. Quality standards (in the UK) require that a concentrate prepared from a single donation of red cells should contain less than 0.1ml of red cells. A dose of 250IU will be sufficient to protect against three adult doses of platelets (18 donations). The injection may be given subcutaneously if there is concern about tissue bleeding with intramuscular injection.

6.2.8.3 Granulocyte transfusions

Granulocyte preparations for transfusion may be contaminated with as much as 30 ml red cells. Although undesirable, it may be necessary to transfuse granulocytes from D-positive donors to D-negative female patients and the appropriate dose of anti-D immunoglobulin should be given based on the calculated volume of red cells transfused.

6.3 Detection of fetal red cells in the maternal circulation

D-negative pregnant women are at risk of alloimmunization whether or not fetal cells are detectable in the maternal circulation. The requirement for a test of fetomaternal haemorrhage is to determine the need for additional anti-D if the volume
of fetal cells detected is greater than that which the standard dose of anti-D immunoglobulin will protect against. Countries vary in their approach to the need for a test of fetomaternal haemorrhage. A test is recommended, for example, in the UK, USA, Canada, Ireland, France and Australia, but not in most European Union countries.

6.3.1 The Kleihauer–Betke acid-elution test

The Kleihauer–Betke acid-elution test was the first test to be introduced for the detection of fetomaternal haemorrhage. The test depends on the fact that fetal red cells contain fetal haemoglobin (HbF) which is insoluble at acid pH (pH 3.3). The test is useful as a screening assay. Blood films are made from maternal blood, treated with an acid buffer solution to elute adult Hb, then stained to identify HbF-containing fetal cells. Adult red cells appear as ‘ghosts’, while fetal red cells are visible as deep pink-stained refractile cells which can then be counted and expressed as a proportion of adult cells. Clearly, this test has inaccuracies because red cell volume varies between women, maternal HbF-containing cells are known to increase during pregnancy and there are some conditions associated with high HbF levels such as hereditary persistent HbF, sickle cell anaemia, thalassaemia and aplastic anaemia. In these cases, there will be an overestimate of the size of fetomaternal haemorrhage, which will waste anti-D, but not put women at risk of immunization.

Accurate assessment of fetomaternal haemorrhage by the Kleihauer test requires attention to detail, accuracy in making films, calibration of microscopes, the use of controls and the accurate identification and counting of fetal cells. The use of a graticule can assist in accuracy. Detailed technical recommendations are published, and a National External Quality Assessment Scheme is available in the UK. This has shown that lack of attention to technical detail and errors in calculation are the major reasons for ‘wrong results’.

6.3.2 Flow cytometry

The estimation of fetomaternal haemorrhage by flow cytometry depends on the identification of D-positive red cells in the presence of D-negative red cells. Fluorochrome-labelled anti-D is used in the direct test, and fluorochrome-labelled anti-IgG after incubation with anti-D in an indirect version of the test. Availability of monoclonal reagents allows the standardization of the assay. Rigorous attention to detail in calibration, selection of settings and performance of calculations, as well as the requirement for an expensive flow cytometer, means that this test is largely restricted to reference laboratories. Some general technical considerations have been published. The limit of sensitivity for accurate counting is one in 1000 (about 2 ml fetomaternal haemorrhage), although sensitivity down to 1:10000 has
been reported. 40,41 Accuracy and reproducibility falls with fetomaternal haemor-
rhages below 2ml, but accuracy is better than the Kleihauer test with bigger feto-
maternal haemorrhages because a larger number of cells are counted. Flow cyto-
meter is of value in assessing the need for additional anti-D immunoglobulin in
large fetomaternal haemorrhages and where the D group of the fetus is
unknown, but suspected to be D negative; large unnecessary doses can be avoided
in these cases. It is also of value in conditions where maternal HbF is high and
would falsely increase the Kleihauer estimate.

6.3.3 Serological tests of fetomaternal haemorrhage
Serological techniques to screen for D-positive cells in maternal blood include the
rosette test and the gel column test. These tests are only useful as screening tests and
cannot accurately assess the size of fetomaternal haemorrhage. The microscopic
weak D test is not recommended, because it is too insensitive and gives too many
false negative results. The rosette test is performed by adding anti-D to maternal
blood to coat any D-positive red cells present. Unabsorbed anti-D is removed by
washing, and D-positive enzyme-treated indicator red cells are then added. These
indicator cells cluster around any anti-D-coated fetal cells to form rosettes, which
are then counted, and the size of fetomaternal haemorrhage estimated from a stan-
dard curve. The test is useful for detecting larger bleeds, above 4ml. In these cases,
the exact size of the fetomaternal haemorrhage needs to be determined accurately
so that the requirement for additional anti-D can be calculated. The rosette test is
commonly used in the USA as a screening test.42 The gel test can identify fetal D-
positive cells to a level of 0.2% (equivalent to a 4.8ml fetomaternal haemorrhage)
and could be used to screen for larger bleeds requiring additional anti-D immuno-
globulin.43

6.3.4 Calculating the size of fetomaternal haemorrhage
Various formulae can be used to derive the size of fetomaternal haemorrhage.
With the Kleihauer test, Mollison’s formula is recommended.1 This assumes an
average maternal red cell volume of 1800ml, that fetal cells are 22% larger than
maternal cells and that only 92% of fetal cells stain darkly. This results in the
formula:

\[
\text{Fetomaternal haemorrhage (in ml)} = \frac{\text{ratio of fetal/adult cells} \times 2400}{e.g. \text{six fetal cells per 6000 adult cells} = \text{fetal/maternal ratio of } 1/1000} \]

\[
\text{estimate of fetomaternal haemorrhage} = 1/1000 \times 2400 \text{ } \text{ i.e. } 2.4 \text{ ml fetal red cells.}
\]

With flow cytometry, red cells are recorded as individual events, and registered
as D positive or D negative; the same maternal red cell volume (1800ml) is
assumed, and an allowance made for fetal red cell volume.
e.g. 2000 D-positive cells counted per 200000 D-negative cells
fetal/maternal ratio = 1/100
estimate of fetomaternal haemorrhage = 1/100 \times 1800 \times 1.22 = 22\text{ml} \text{fetal red cells.}

When the size of a fetomaternal haemorrhage calculated by the Kleihauer test is compared with the estimate by flow cytometry, the Kleihauer test seems to overestimate the size of haemorrhage in some cases, particularly the higher volumes, at least in part due to false-positive maternal HbF cells. This would tend to suggest that anti-D immunoglobulin is being overprescribed in many cases.

6.4 Fetomaternal haemorrhage and dose of anti-D immunoglobulin

6.4.1 Fetomaternal haemorrhage at delivery
Fetomaternal haemorrhage has been shown to occur most consistently at delivery, at the time of separation of the placenta. There is a clear association between the volume of the haemorrhage and the likelihood of immunization, as was demonstrated in studies before the availability of anti-D immunoglobulin. If no fetomaternal haemorrhage was observed at delivery, 3% became immunized; with a haemorrhage above 0.1\text{ml}, 31% became immunized. Fetomaternal haemorrhage over 4\text{ml} occurs in about 1% of deliveries, and haemorrhage over 12\text{ml} in 2–3 deliveries per 1000.\textsuperscript{1} Hence, it is important to retain tests which identify these larger haemorrhages so that additional anti-D immunoglobulin can be given after delivery. However, it is also important to bear in mind that immunization can, and does, occur in the absence of a demonstrable fetomaternal haemorrhage, since the single sample used to determine haemorrhage may not coincide with the appearance of fetal red cells in the maternal circulation. Thus, anti-D immunoglobulin should be given for recognized events (described below) whether or not fetal cells are detected in the maternal circulation. In rare cases, the fetomaternal haemorrhage can be so large as to cause a D-negative mother to test as weak D positive, with a considerable risk of alloimmunization unless recognized and extra anti-D given.

6.4.2 Bleeding during pregnancy
Vaginal bleeding before 28 weeks’ gestation may be associated with spontaneous, threatened, complete or incomplete miscarriage (abortion). After 24 weeks, bleeding is classified as antepartum haemorrhage. In theory, each of these events may be associated with fetomaternal haemorrhage and require prophylactic anti-D immunoglobulin (see Tables 6.1, 6.2 and 6.3).

In spontaneous abortion, up to 35% of women may have small-volume fetomaternal haemorrhage (up to 0.05\text{ml}).\textsuperscript{1} The risk of immunization is about 1.5–2%.\textsuperscript{44} Where instrumentation is used to remove retained products of concep-
tion after spontaneous abortion, larger fetomaternal haemorrhage is more likely due to breach of the chorio-decidual space and anti-D immunoglobulin should always be given.45

The situation is more complex with threatened abortion, where the pregnancy continues.46 Bleeding in early pregnancy is common – about 21% of pregnancies have some form of bleeding before 20 weeks and not all women who bleed will need anti-D immunoglobulin.47 Before 12 weeks, vaginal bleeding is more likely to be uterine rather than fetal because the chorio-decidual space has not been breached. Any fetomaternal haemorrhage is likely to be less than 0.1 ml and up to 3% of women may become immunized by this dose.48 In practice, this seems to be a rare event before 12 weeks’ gestation, affecting about one in 100 alloimmunized women (CR Whitfield, personal communication). It is possible that fetomaternal haemorrhage is more likely (but not proven) if associated with painful or heavy bleeding which continues, and it is considered prudent to give anti-D immunoglobulin in these circumstances. Asymptomatic women with threatened miscarriage before 12 weeks do not require anti-D. After 12 weeks’ gestation, there is a consensus that all women should be given anti-D immunoglobulin due to the greater likelihood of larger fetomaternal haemorrhage and opportunity for alloimmunization.

Antepartum haemorrhage, occurring later in pregnancy, is more commonly associated with fetomaternal haemorrhage. It may also be associated with abruption, when massive fetomaternal haemorrhage which threatens fetal viability may occur, but this can also happen without vaginal bleeding. A test of fetomaternal haemorrhage is required in these circumstances, so that the appropriate dose of anti-D immunoglobulin can be given.

Women who continue to bleed during pregnancy will require additional anti-D immunoglobulin. A pragmatic approach is to administer the standard dose of anti-D at 6-weekly intervals, and to monitor each episode with a test for fetomaternal haemorrhage to check for the need for a larger dose.

### 6.4.3 Spontaneous fetomaternal haemorrhage during first, second and third trimesters

A number of studies have shown that ‘occult’ fetomaternal haemorrhage occurs in the absence of any identified precipitating event. The D antigen is well developed by 6 weeks’ gestation, although the risk of fetomaternal haemorrhage in the first trimester is limited by the small amount of fetal red cells. The fetoplacental blood volume increases from 25 ml at 19 weeks to 150 ml at 31 weeks and so, as expected, spontaneous fetomaternal haemorrhages occur with increasing frequency and volume during the course of pregnancy. There are some difficulties in the accurate assessment of very small fetomaternal haemorrhages due to persistent HbF or the increase in F-cells above the normal limit (0.9%) between 8 and
32 weeks’ gestation in 25% of normal pregnancies. The incidence of very small spontaneous fetomaternal haemorrhages in the first trimester is therefore uncertain. Using a standardized sensitive test capable of detecting a 0.01 ml haemorrhage, and testing prospectively every 2 weeks during pregnancy, Bowman et al. detected fetomaternal haemorrhages in 3% of women during the first trimester, in 12.1% of women during the second trimester and in 45.4% of women during the third trimester. In this series, only one woman (3%) had a fetomaternal haemorrhage over 5 ml.

Routine monitoring using the Kleihauer test during trials of antenatal anti-D gives an indication of spontaneous fetomaternal haemorrhage at 28 and 34 weeks’ gestation, when the women attend for anti-D prophylaxis. The prevalence and size of fetomaternal haemorrhages increase at the end of pregnancy. Large haemorrhages (over 5 ml fetal red cells) in the last trimester were observed in 0.5% women; haemorrhage of over 10 ml was reported in 0.27% of women. These analyses from only two samples taken during each pregnancy almost certainly underestimate the true incidence during pregnancy, especially in the third trimester, when prophylactic anti-D would be expected to result in clearance of some D-positive fetal red cells from the maternal circulation.

6.4.4 Other significant events during pregnancy

Abdominal trauma late in pregnancy due to vehicular seat belt accidents or blows to the abdomen may precipitate a large fetomaternal haemorrhage (over 25 ml). Women with such injuries usually present to Accident and Emergency Units, rather than Obstetric Units, and the need for anti-D immunoglobulin and a Kleihauer test is often overlooked.

Ectopic pregnancy, intrauterine death and stillbirth may also result in fetomaternal haemorrhage, and larger doses of anti-D immunoglobulin should be given as based on a test to measure the size of the haemorrhage.

6.4.5 Fetomaternal haemorrhage due to medical procedures

6.4.5.1 During pregnancy

Iatrogenic fetomaternal haemorrhages can occur as a result of diagnostic procedures carried out on pregnant women. Amniocentesis and chorionic villous sampling are commonly carried out for the detection of chromosomal disorders and have been shown to induce fetomaternal haemorrhage. Prior to ultrasonography, about 3% of women undergoing amniocentesis were shown to have fetomaternal haemorrhages over 0.1 ml, with 1.6% having haemorrhages of over 1 ml. Therefore, prophylactic anti-D immunoglobulin is recommended at amniocentesis in D-negative women. Chorionic villous sampling can be carried out earlier than amniocentesis, at about 11 weeks’ gestation, and, although fetomaternal haemor-
rhages have not been reported, rises in alpha-fetoprotein after chorionic villous sampling have been taken as indirect evidence of fetomaternal leak, and prophylactic anti-D immunoglobulin is recommended. 52,53

Fetal blood sampling carries a risk of a leak of red cells, which may, on occasion, be life-threatening to the fetus, either as a result of cord tamponade or exsanguination. In women not already immunized to D, such as those being managed for alloimmune thrombocytopenia (Section 14.3.1), anti-D immunoglobulin is advised.

Other intrauterine procedures such as embryo reduction and insertion of shunts present a potential for accidental fetomaternal haemorrhage, although they have not formally been shown to cause alloimmunization, and anti-D immunoglobulin is recommended.

6.4.5.2 Termination of pregnancy

Therapeutic abortion is a clear risk factor for alloimmunization, particularly with instrumentation. About 4% of women have a fetomaternal haemorrhage of over 0.2 ml fetal blood and about 4–5% become immunized.44 Prophylactic anti-D immunoglobulin is therefore indicated, according to the gestational age (see Table 6.2). After 20 weeks’ gestation, a test for fetomaternal haemorrhage is required to determine the need for larger doses of anti-D.

6.4.5.3 At induced delivery

Delivery by Caesarean section and removal of the placenta manually is associated with a 23.5% incidence of fetomaternal haemorrhage compared with 5.2% for normal vaginal delivery; the volume of haemorrhage is also often greater.1 External cephalic version is also associated with larger haemorrhages.54 It is therefore essential that a test for fetomaternal haemorrhage is carried out to assess the need for additional anti-D immunoglobulin. It should be noted that fetal cells may not appear in the maternal circulation until some days later if spilt into the abdominal cavity.

6.4.6 Calculation of the required dose of anti-D

The requirement for additional anti-D immunoglobulin is based on the estimation of fetomaternal haemorrhage and will depend on the standard dose used. With the 500 IU dose, the threshold is 4 ml, and the 1500 IU dose is assumed to protect against 15 ml of fetal D-positive red cells. Any additional dose of anti-D immunoglobulin should be given immediately, calculated as 125 IU per 1 ml of fetal red cells to the nearest vial, rounding up. A repeat test of fetomaternal haemorrhage is required 48 hours later, together with a test for the presence of free anti-D in the serum/plasma.16,17,38 Further follow-up is as shown in Table 6.3.
6.5 Procurement of hyperimmune anti-D

6.5.1 Identification, recruitment, boosting and accreditation of donors

When anti-D immunoglobulin was first produced for clinical trials and early routine postpartum prophylaxis, the only sources of anti-D-containing plasma for fractionation were women who had already been immunized by pregnancies affected by HDFN, or men and women who had been immunized by blood transfusion. After the US and Medical Research Council (UK) trials were reported, it soon became apparent that donor programmes would be needed in order to maintain sufficient supplies of anti-D for universal routine use. These programmes required individuals to be deliberately injected with D-positive red cells in order to boost anti-D levels. Initially, the programmes relied heavily on selected individual red cell donors, preferentially of R\(_2\)R\(_2\) phenotype. Since there was no matching of other phenotypes, unwanted nonD antibodies were raised in some individuals. There was also the risk of transmitting viral infections prior to the introduction of screening, although potential red cell donors were excluded on history and examination. As soon as screening tests became available, both red cell donors and plasma donors were tested due to the potential risks involved to both boosted recipient, and the mothers (and their babies) receiving pooled immunoglobulin products. As the prophylaxis programmes became more successful, fewer immunized women were available to source anti-D plasma, and programmes were introduced whereby D-negative male volunteers (and nonfertile women) were deliberately immunized with red blood cells to produce a primary response, followed by the boosting of anti-D to high levels.

It is obviously more cost-effective to recruit suitable individuals who have already been immunized ‘naturally’ since only a few injections of red cells are likely to elicit high levels of anti-D. Various primary immunizing schedules may be used in new donors – either repeated monthly injections of red cells or a larger initial dose, followed by a booster injection. In practice, either approach works satisfactorily in attaining high levels of anti-D.

For donors of anti-D, the highest standards of safety are required, with the use of accredited red cell donations which have been quarantined frozen in liquid nitrogen for 1 year while the donor is followed postdonation. It is also important to ensure matching for nonD clinically important antigens to avoid raising unwanted antibodies which will make providing emergency transfusions for the immunized donor more difficult, and also contaminate the anti-D immunoglobulin. The details are summarized in Tables 6.5 and 6.6.

Because of ethical concerns about immunizing volunteers deliberately, and the resources required to set up accredited panels of red cells, many countries have opted not to produce their own anti-D or have, in recent years, abandoned their
programmes due to increasing public concerns about the transmission of (unknown) infections. As a result, the majority of the anti-D plasma is produced in the USA from paid donors. Nevertheless, until the advent of new variant Creutzfeldt–Jacob disease, the UK was essentially self-sufficient in anti-D immunoglobulin for postpartum use due to successful immunization programmes which had commenced shortly after the introduction of prophylaxis. The prophylaxis programmes will determine the amount of anti-D immunoglobulin required. A standard postnatal prophylaxis programme requires about 1 million IU anti-D immunoglobulin per million of population (about 52 million IU in the UK); extension to routine antepartum prophylaxis to all women increases the amount to about 4 million IU anti-D immunoglobulin per million of (Caucasian) population. Because the current yield of anti-D immunoglobulin from plasma by Cohn fractionation is in the region of 20%, the amount of anti-D plasma required from donors is about five times higher.

### 6.5.2 Manufacture of anti-D immunoglobulin and safety considerations

Plasma containing anti-D is converted into vials of immunoglobulin by fractionation in an appropriate licensed manufacturing establishment. The process most widely used to produce anti-D immunoglobulin for intramuscular use is some variation of the cold ethanol fractionation of Cohn. These products have been used
worldwide for over 35 years with an excellent safety record – no anti-D immunoglobulin produced in this way has transmitted hepatitis B virus, human immunodeficiency virus or hepatitis C virus.\textsuperscript{58,59} This is partly because of the screening procedures to select and accredit red cells and plasma donors, but largely due to the fact that the cold ethanol fractionation process itself renders infected plasma virus safe by partitioning and, possibly, by virucidal action. Anti-D immunoglobulin for im use, therefore, has one of the best safety records of any fractionated product. Additional virucidal steps, such as treatment by solvent detergent or by pepsin at pH 4, are now being included by the various manufacturers at the request of the regulatory authorities.

Anti-D produced for intravenous use requires a different manufacturing process, usually some variation of ion exchange chromatography, and it is known that such processes are inherently less safe than cold ethanol fractionation and, in the absence of virucidal steps, have transmitted hepatitis C infection.\textsuperscript{58,60} Manufacturers are now also required to demonstrate that the plasma pools used for fractionation are negative for hepatitis C virus by nucleic acid testing for viral genome. The current generation of anti-D immunoglobulins produced for im and iv use have additional virucidal steps included, and nucleic acid testing for human immunodeficiency virus and hepatitis B virus is also under consideration by the regulatory authorities.

The UK has an additional problem associated with bovine spongiform encephalopathy and new variant Creutzfeldt–Jacob disease, and theoretical concerns that abnormal prions might be transmitted by blood and plasma products.\textsuperscript{61} As a result, all anti-D currently used in the UK is manufactured in the UK from anti-D plasma sourced from US donors.

\section*{6.6 Economics of prophylaxis programmes}

\subsection*{6.6.1 Cost-effectiveness of antenatal versus postnatal prophylaxis}

The standard postpartum prophylaxis programme which reduces alloimmunization by 90\% is highly cost-effective in populations that have significant numbers of D-negative women and has been a major factor in contributing to the reduction in HDFN mortality and morbidity.\textsuperscript{19} On the other hand, the addition of antenatal treatment to this programme was found to be much less cost-effective.\textsuperscript{62} In the presence of limited supplies of anti-D, it was concluded that countries should implement the former, and then carry out cost-effective analyses to determine whether or not to extend to routine antenatal prophylaxis.

A number of studies have shown that administration of anti-D starting at 28 weeks’ gestation will reduce the rate of alloimmunization to about 0.2\% of women at risk.\textsuperscript{63} The question, therefore, does not so much concern the effectiveness of
antenatal prophylaxis, but whether the benefits justify the additional costs. One also needs to take into account which outcome measures are to be analysed. These might include cost per immunization prevented, or cost per case of HDFN prevented or cost per life saved. A number of studies have addressed this issue. A full analysis requires accurate information on the current failure rate with postpartum prophylaxis, the anticipated reduction in alloimmunization, the anticipated prevention of loss of life and the cost of the additional anti-D. The costs of implementing an antenatal programme (which includes administration and organizational costs, as well as the anti-D immunoglobulin) are offset against the maternity and neonatal costs incurred as a result of alloimmunization. Analyses have shown that it is more cost-effective to treat primigravidae rather than all women – a consequence of primigravidae having a larger number of future pregnancies and greater savings in future healthcare costs. The most recent Scottish study suggests that antenatal prophylaxis for primigravidae would actually save money for the National Health Service (NHS). It was estimated that this strategy to prevent immunization and its consequences, would result in net savings of £197 per alloimmunization prevented. Prophylaxis for all women would incur additional costs, at £2785 per alloimmunization prevented and £40164 per fetal loss prevented. These costs are comparable to some existing healthcare services provided routinely. A key factor in planning implementation is the availability of sufficient supplies of anti-D immunoglobulin; these have now been secured for the UK. In the UK, a remaining problem with the implementation of antenatal prophylaxis is that the costs and the savings occur in different parts of the NHS budget, and cooperation is required between the obstetricians, midwives, general practitioners, hospital transfusion laboratories and the Blood Transfusion services for successful introduction.

### 6.7 Future developments

The use of monoclonal anti-D is an attractive alternative to the donor-derived polyclonal anti-D immunoglobulin since, in theory, this could ensure virtually unlimited supplies of standardized material produced by biotechnology. Various products have been under development over the past 15 years and a blend of IgG1 and IgG3 anti-Ds has been tested in phase I efficacy studies in volunteers, with considerable success in clearing D-positive red cells from the circulation and in suppressing the immune response (Section 5.6). The major remaining difficulty is the implementation of comparative clinical trials, given that the current product is so effective and safe, and in meeting regulatory concerns with material produced by cell lines in vitro.
6.8 References

Clinical application of anti-D prophylaxis

Fetal genotyping

Neil D Avent
University of the West of England, Bristol, UK

7.1 Introduction

Determination of the genetic status of a fetus has been a major area for the application of molecular biology in modern medicine. Indeed, the use of the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to amplify DNA was first reported in a paper describing the prenatal diagnosis of sickle cell disease.\(^1\) Four years later, this report was followed by the first description of an allele-specific PCR test, again for the prenatal diagnosis of sickle cell disease.\(^2\) Without doubt, the PCR has revolutionized contemporary molecular biology because, within a few hours, an individual’s DNA can be analysed for the presence or absence of an allele, providing the sequence of the gene of interest is known. This chapter describes the principles of PCR, it recounts the development of PCR-based methods for the analysis of fetal blood groups and it reviews PCR-based assays which are currently used for the management of alloimmunized pregnancies. Prospects and constraints for fetal genotyping from maternal blood will then be considered.

7.2 The polymerase chain reaction

7.2.1 Principle of the polymerase chain reaction

The PCR involves the amplification of a specific DNA target using synthetic oligonucleotides that have sequences complementary to regions flanking the target sequence. Heating DNA (normally to 94 °C) causes its denaturation into two single strands. On cooling the mixture, the oligonucleotides (so-called ‘upstream’ and ‘downstream’ primers) bind to their target sites. Once bound, a DNA polymerase uses the primers to start the synthesis of a new DNA molecule. This process requires deoxyribonucleotides, Mg\(^{2+}\) (an essential enzyme cofactor) and buffering to maintain an appropriate ionic strength and pH. The DNA polymerase is normally thermostable and will operate at a temperature optimum of 72–75 °C. Repeating the process of heating and cooling many times (20–30 cycles being the norm) results in an exponential increase in the target sequence in the PCR mix, with the molecular weight of the PCR product being dependent on the distance between the
two primers when annealed to their target sequences. PCR products are normally visualized following gel electrophoresis and staining with ethidium bromide.

The PCR has many derivatives and adaptations introduced largely to enable the analysis of genomic polymorphisms. The most common adaptations are PCR restriction fragment length polymorphism (PCR-RFLP) analysis and the allele-specific primer amplification (ASPA). These are described in more detail below.

### 7.2.2 Polymerase chain reaction – restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis

PCR-RFLP analysis evolved from Southern blotting analysis. Southern blotting involves the digestion of genomic DNA with restriction endonucleases – enzymes which recognize and cleave DNA at specific sequences or restriction sites. DNA fragments are then separated using gel electrophoresis and visualized by transferring (blotting) the fragments onto a nylon or nitrocellulose membrane which is then incubated with a radioactively labelled DNA probe and autoradiographed. Fragments of digested genes are revealed as bands. Polymorphic genes often show differences in the sizes and numbers of distinct bands because of the existence of different numbers of restriction sites within the gene. This is because point mutations responsible for different alleles may disrupt (or create) restriction sites. The size differences of the DNA fragments after digestion give rise to the term ‘restriction fragment length polymorphisms’. PCR-RFLP analysis is a development of this technique. An allelic region of the gene under investigation is first amplified by the PCR. Figure 7.1 illustrates the principle of PCR-RFLP. The resultant PCR product (amplicon) is then cleaved with an appropriate restriction enzyme and the fragments are separated electrophoretically. The presence (or absence) of different alleles may then be deduced from visual inspection of the bands representing the separated fragments.

### 7.2.3 Allele-specific primer amplification

ASPA has many different pseudonyms including allele-specific PCR (ASP), amplification refractory mutation system (ARMS) and analysis of single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP). This approach is commonly used for the detection of alleles caused by simple point mutations; these include many blood group polymorphisms such as K/k, Fy°/Fyb and RhE/e. The approach involves the use of PCR primers that match specifically one allele and, under the right conditions, will not bind and extend from the other allele(s). Normally, this involves the synthesis of a PCR primer with a perfect match to a known allele at its 3’ end. Thus, when this primer binds to its target allele, there is perfect base-pairing between the primer and the single-stranded template DNA, and extension from the 3’ end of the primer will proceed. When the primer binds to target DNA corresponding to a different allele, perfect base-pairing will not occur, and the thermostable DNA
polymerase will not extend from the 3′ end of the bound primer. Thus, the presence of a PCR product is indicative of the presence of a particular allele and the lack of a PCR product indicates the absence of an allele. Figure 7.1 illustrates the principle of allele-specific PCR.

It would be unwise to utilize a diagnostic test where a negative result is indicated by the absence of a PCR product without an internal control to show that the PCR was successful. Thus, ASP assays include a primer pair corresponding to a nonpolymorphic DNA target. This PCR product should be amplified from the DNA of all
individuals. The absence of a band corresponding to the internal control would indicate that the PCR conditions were defective (poor template DNA, omission of a key reagent, inactive DNA polymerase etc.), rather than that the sample lacks the target allele. Thus, assay results are only reported when the presence of a positive control band(s) demonstrates the success of the PCR.

7.3 PCR-based typing for clinically significant blood groups

It may be useful to establish the blood group of a fetus following maternal allo-immunization to a clinically significant blood group antigen which the fetus has the potential to inherit from the father. In the majority of cases, this is the D antigen, but testing for other antigens such as K, Rhc, RhE and Fya may also be useful. Figure 7.2 shows the range of requests for genotyping referred to one major UK laboratory. Molecular genetic tests that define blood group status are based on the PCR amplification of fetal DNA (although serological tests are easier to perform when fetal red cells are available [Section 3.5.2]). Obviously, this is only possible when the molecular genetic basis of the blood group polymorphism under investigation has been defined. At present, the molecular genetic basis of almost all clinically significant blood group antigens has been elucidated. Most of these polymorphisms are caused by single base changes but others involve more complex genomic rear-

Figure 7.2 Genotyping requests referred to the International Blood Group Reference Laboratory (UK) from 1995 to 1999.

Totals for each type of investigation are shown. Since RhC/c and RhD multiplex tests are used routinely for RHD investigations, they are not included in the totals for RhC and Rhc typing.
The molecular bases of the antigens which may cause clinically significant maternal alloimmunization have been reviewed in detail previously\(^3,4\) and are considered below only briefly, along with PCR-based tests for their identification.

7.3.1 The Rh system

7.3.1.1 Molecular biology of the Rh antigens

The Rh antigens are expressed on 30 kD nonglycosylated and palmitylated multi-spanning membrane proteins (termed the Rh proteins) that are tightly complexed with an ancestrally related glycosylated membrane protein called the Rh-associated glycoprotein.\(^5\) There are two Rh protein species, D and CcEe, which have 30–35 amino acid differences between them. These variations define the differences that generate D and CcEe antigens. Amino acid changes within the second and fourth external loops of the RhCcEe proteins are responsible for the C/c (serine or proline at amino acid 103) and E/e (proline or alanine at amino acid 226) blood group polymorphisms (Figure 7.3). The RhD protein expresses at least six different

![Figure 7.3 Polymorphic proteins of the red cell commonly implicated in HDFN.](image-url)
epitope clusters as defined by site-directed mutagenesis studies.\(^6,7\) Certain individuals with partial D phenotypes lack one or more of the D epitopes and, as a consequence, can become alloimmunized to those they lack. Thus, a partial D phenotype mother with a normal D-positive fetus may form anti-D, which may have the potential to affect subsequent pregnancies.

### 7.3.1.2 Molecular bases of the D-positive/D-negative polymorphism

Shortly after the first Rh cDNA was cloned,\(^8,9\) Southern blotting studies revealed that there were two genes (named \textit{RHCE} and \textit{RHD}) at the \textit{RH} locus. Both genes comprise 10 exons with intervening introns (Figure 7.4b). The molecular basis of the D-positive/D-negative polymorphism varies between different ethnic groups. Investigation of genomic DNA from Caucasians has indicated that the \textit{RHD} gene is absent or deleted from D-negative individuals (Figure 7.4c).\(^10\)

Most D-negative Africans have an \textit{RHD} gene, called \textit{RHD} pseudogene (\textit{RHD}\(\psi\)), which is grossly intact but contains multiple mutations and does not give rise to a transcript.\(^11,12\) The mutations include a 37 base pair duplication at the intron 3/exon 4 boundary, missense mutations in exons 5 and 6, and a nonsense mutation in exon 6 (Figure 7.4a). The frequency of \textit{RHD}\(\psi\) in black D-negative phenotypes is high. \textit{RHD}\(\psi\) was found in 66% of South African D-negative blacks and 24% of D-negative African Americans.\(^12\) Furthermore, 15% of South African D-negative blacks possessed a hybrid \textit{RHD-RHCE-RHD} gene that is associated with the VS+V− blood group phenotype. The remaining 18% had the complete \textit{RHD} gene deletion that accounts for the vast majority of D-negative phenotypes in Caucasians. So, in mixed-race populations, the occurrence of \textit{RHD}\(\psi\) will be frequent.

There are conflicting reports on the molecular genetic basis of the D-negative phenotype in Taiwanese and Japanese. One report indicates that a large proportion of D-negative Japanese possess \textit{RHD} genes;\(^13\) other reports describe complete \textit{RHD} gene deletions.\(^14,15\) Within Japanese and Chinese populations, there are individuals who appear to be D negative by normal serological methods, but anti-D can be adsorbed onto and eluted from the surface of their red cells. These so-called D-elute (D\(_{el}\)) phenotypes are characterized by the presence of an \textit{RHD} gene, possibly indicating the presence of an altered RhD protein. In some individuals, the molecular basis of the D\(_{el}\) phenotype appears to involve a 1013 base pair deletion in the \textit{RHD} gene, which includes exon 9.\(^16\)

D-negative individuals with d\(\text{Ce}\(r')\) and d\(\text{cE}\ (r'')\) haplotypes may also have intact or partially intact D genes.\(^17,18\) This has been explained by the presence of hybrid \textit{RH} genes comprising sequences derived from both the \textit{RHCE} and \textit{RHD} genes. In two instances, Caucasians expressing C\(\text{de}\ (r'r'')\) phenotypes were found to have intact \textit{RHD} genes with a nonsense mutation in exon 1 or a 4 base pair deletion in exon 4.\(^18,19\)
RhD genotyping tests

Prenatal testing for RHD status using PCR was first described by Bennett et al.\textsuperscript{20} This assay detected the presence or absence of the D gene using primers specific for exon 10 of the RHD gene. Arce et al.\textsuperscript{21} identified a small genomic deletion within intron 4 of the RHD gene and described a PCR assay capable of amplifying both RHCE and RHD introns. Two products of 1200 and 600 base pairs are obtained, the
smaller product arising from, and so indicating, the presence of the RHD intron. Other workers have exploited sequence differences in exon 7 where the RHD gene shows the widest divergence from the RHCE gene.22

Assays which detect the presence or absence of a single region of the RHD gene remain in widespread use, although many workers have reported false-positive results in Caucasian as well as non-Caucasian individuals.18,23,24 The limitations of these assays have become more obvious as the molecular bases underlying the different partial D phenotypes have emerged.5,25,26 Since the majority of partial D
phenotypes involve hybrid RH genes where exchange of DNA has occurred between the RHCE and RHD genes, RHD genotyping, if directed to these regions of exchange, would incorrectly type some partial D phenotypes as D negative.

To overcome the limitations inherent in the detection of just one region of the RHD gene, the early assays were further developed and incorporated into second generation multiplex tests. These assays simultaneously detect the presence of at least two regions of the RHD gene. Although these multiplex assays more accurately predict the presence of partial D phenotypes, they continue falsely to type most D-negative individuals of African descent as D positive.

The discovery of RHD\(\gamma\) heralded the development of improved PCR-based tests to detect the D-negative phenotype in individuals of African descent. The 37 base pair duplication has been exploited in a new multiplex test which is able to discriminate the major Caucasian and Black D-negative alleles, while simultaneously defining RhC/c status. This multiplex test is depicted in Figure 7.4a and the PCR products after electrophoretic separation are shown in Figure 7.5.

Many requests for RHD typing are to support the clinical management of pregnant women with anti-C+D. In such cases, it is probably good practice to type the fetus for RHC as well as RHD. Hadley et al.\(^{30}\) reported a case of a D-negative fetus with severe HDFN delivered by a mother with apparent anti-C+D. On further investigation, the mother’s antibody was shown to be anti-G (which recognizes D-positive or C-positive cells).

### 7.3.1.4 RhC/c and RhE/e genotyping

Transcript and genomic sequencing of exon 5 of the RHCE gene reveal that a single amino acid change (proline 226 to alanine) accounts for the E/e polymorphism. The situation regarding the C/c polymorphism is more complex. Initially, it was thought that six nucleotide substitutions dispersed throughout RHCE exons 1 and 2 causing four amino acid changes (cysteine 16 to tryptophan; methionine 60 to isoleucine; serine 68 to asparagine; serine 103 to proline) were responsible for expression of the C and c antigens, respectively. However, analyses of Rhc transcripts isolated from black individuals indicated that there is variation within five of the nucleotide substitutions and that only the cytosine 309 to thymine substitution (encoding the change serine 103 to proline) is critical for C/c polymorphic variation.

Rhc and RhE genotyping tests were first introduced following the description of the regions of the RHCE gene responsible for the polymorphisms (exon 2 C/c and exon 5 E/e). Le van Kim et al.\(^{31}\) described an allele-specific PCR test to define c and E status, and Faas et al.\(^{32}\) refined the test to differentiate E/e status. RhC typing is not straightforward because the RHD gene shares with the RhC allele of RHCE the nucleotide at position 306 critical for RhC expression. Initial C/c genotyping tests
were aimed at the exon 1 localized nucleotide polymorphism that predicts the cysteine 16 to tryptophan change in the CcEe protein \((C \rightarrow c)\). However, the cysteine 16 allele associates poorly with C status in Blacks, and is a poor choice for C/c genotyping. A report describing a 109 base pair insert into the RhC allele of RHCE allowed definitive RhC genotyping.\(^{33}\) Although intronic, this polymorphism showed perfect correlation with RhC phenotype. Recent work using multiplexing of primers specific for RHD and the RhC and Rhc alleles of RHCE allows the simultaneous definition of RhC/c and RhD blood group status.\(^{12}\) This multiplex test is depicted in Figure 7.4a and the PCR products after electrophoretic separation are shown in Figure 7.5.

7.3.1.5 Rh zygosity testing

It is normal practice when considering amniocentesis for fetal genotyping to determine the Rh phenotype of the father. If the father is homozygous (RhD/RhD), amniocentesis for genotyping should not be necessary; the fetus would be D positive. However, Rh phenotypes cannot accurately predict genotype. For example, a father of Rh phenotype CDe (R\(1\)) may be of genotype CDe/CDe (R\(1\)R\(1\)), CDe/Cde (R\(1\)r\('\)/H11032) or even CDe/-D-. Unless PCR tests are available to identify specific haplotypes, then accurate Rh genotyping is not possible. No tests are presently published to identify r\('\) or r\(''\) haplotypes. However, a recent report has described a method to define R\(0\) (cDe) haplotypes. This PCR-based test exploits the discovery of a sequence-length polymorphism in intron 2 of the Rhc allele of RHCE. In all cde and cDE phenotype individuals tested, a repeat of six guanine/cytosine/adenine/cytosine nucleotides was found, but in all cDe phenotype individuals these repeat sequences were absent.\(^{34}\) This observation may form the basis for a test to differentiate between cDe/cDe and cDe/cde fathers, the most common request for zygosity testing.

Recent work on the genomic organization of the RHD and RHCE genes provides the basis for a method to screen for the Caucasian cde haplotype.\(^{35}\) In D-positive genomes, the RHD gene is flanked by two highly homologous DNA segments (named ‘RHD boxes’) that are about 9000 base pairs in size (Figure 7.4b). The two RHD boxes (upstream and downstream) are highly (98.6%) homologous. In the deletion-type (cde) D-negative genome, the RHD deletion occurs within the upstream and downstream RHD boxes, and a residual hybrid (5'-upstream–3'-downstream) RHD box is left. A PCR-based test for this hybrid box is now available to detect the cde haplotype. This test approach is useful for zygosity testing.

7.3.2 Kell system

7.3.2.1 Molecular basis of Kell antigen expression

Antigens of the Kell system are expressed by the Kell glycoprotein, a membrane-bound enzyme that has significant homology to zinc-dependent neutral metallo-
endopeptidases that are known to process peptide hormones (Figure 7.3).\textsuperscript{36} The Kell glycoprotein has recently been shown to cleave proteolytically big endothelin-3 to produce ET-3, a potent bioreactive peptide with multiple functional roles.\textsuperscript{37} There are currently 22 Kell system antigens, of which K/k, Js\textsuperscript{a} and Kp\textsuperscript{a} have been implicated in HDFN. Following the cloning of the first Kell cDNA in 1991,\textsuperscript{38} the major clinically significant K/k (KEL1/KEL2) polymorphism was defined as a single point mutation in exon 6 of the KEL gene, altering amino acid 193 from methionine (K) to threonine (k). The presence of methionine in K-positive individuals disrupts an N-glycosylation signal motif, asparagine-X-threonine, and this may explain why the K antigen is so immunogenic in K-negative individuals.

7.3.2 KEL genotyping

The description of the molecular basis of the K/k (K1/K2) blood group polymorphism permitted the application of PCR-RFLP and PCR-ASPA assays for the prenatal definition of K status.\textsuperscript{39} The PCR-RFLP test is based on the amplification of exons 6 and 7 of the KEL gene (resulting in a 740 base pair product) followed by digestion with Bsm I; K-positive DNA is cleaved with Bsm I, while K-negative DNA is not. Thus, two fragments of 540 and 200 base pairs are observed in K-positive individuals, but the Bsm I-resistant PCR product of 740 base pairs is observed in K-negative individuals. During 1996, four further reports described improved K and K/k assays which included internal controls either to confirm that amplification had occurred (in ASPA assays)\textsuperscript{40–42} or to confirm restriction endonuclease cleavage (in RFLP tests).\textsuperscript{43}

Fetal anaemia, caused by other Kell system antigens, is comparatively rare. Anti-Kpa (KEL3) and anti-Jsa (KEL6) can cause fetal anaemia. PCR-based diagnostic tests specific for the detection of these alleles have been described elsewhere.\textsuperscript{44,45}

7.3.3 Duffy system

7.3.3.1 Molecular basis of Duffy antigen expression

The Duffy antigens are expressed on the red cell promiscuous chemokine receptor known as Duffy antigen receptor for chemokines (DARC) which has seven membrane-spanning domains with a large extracellular N-terminus where the Fya, Fyb and Fy6 antigens are located (Figure 7.3). The Fya/Fyb polymorphism is associated with a single acid change, glycine 42 to aspartic acid, although this was originally reported to be at amino acid 44.\textsuperscript{46–49} Further work revealed the molecular basis of the erythroid-silent Fy(a–b–) phenotype in Blacks. A single base change in the promoter region of the FY gene (thymine to cystosine) disrupts a GATA (nucleotide sequence: guanine/adenine/thymine/adenine) motif, which functions as a binding site for the erythroid-specific transcription factor GATA-1. This mutation causes the complete lack of Fy glycoprotein on red cells, but, interestingly, Fy is
expressed normally in nonerythroid tissues such as endothelial cells of postcapillary venules.

7.3.3.2 Fy genotyping

Initially, PCR-RFLP tests were described for the determination of the FY*A and FY*B alleles based on the cleavage of PCR products with the restriction endonuclease Ban I. The GATA (thymine to cytosine) promoter expression was identified by a PCR-RFLP using the restriction endonuclease Sty I.49 Allele-specific tests that could differentiate these alleles were subsequently described.50,51 The tests exploit Fya or Fyb allele-specific reverse primers paired with forward primers specific for either the normal or mutated GATA-1 sequences in the promoter region of the gene (Figure 7.6).

7.3.4 Kidd system

Kidd system antigens may elicit antibodies which can cause severe HDFN, albeit rarely. The Kidd blood group antigens are expressed on the red cell membrane urea transporter and are caused by a single nucleotide polymorphism that causes an amino acid change, aspartic acid 280 to asparagine (Jka → Jkb).52,53 A PCR test suitable for the prenatal diagnosis of Jkα/Jkβ status has been published,54 although it gives incorrect genotypic assignment to the extremely rare Jk(a−b−) phenotype, which types as Jk(a−b+) . The molecular basis of the Jk(a−b−) phenotype has been defined in Polynesians and Finns and is caused by splice site mutations and the disruption of a consensus N-glycan addition site.55,56 In all Jk(a−b−) phenotypes tested, silent Jkb alleles are present.

7.3.5 ABO system

Several techniques for ABO genotyping have been described.57,58 ABO genotyping is complicated by the large number of different group O alleles and the many hybrid
ABO genes that express variant A and B subgroups. A discussion of the complexities of ABO genetics is outside the scope of this chapter. Although ABO genotyping is technically feasible, it is performed only rarely because fetal anaemia due to anti-A or anti-B tends to be mild in Caucasians, although it may be more severe in some other populations (Section 2.6.1).

7.4 Noninvasive testing

The fetal genotyping tests described in the previous Sections utilize genomic DNA isolated from cells contained in amniotic fluid or chorionic villi. These cells or tissues are obtained using invasive procedures. Thus, the benefit of knowing the fetal genotype must be measured against the small risk of performing amniocentesis or chorionic villous sampling. Noninvasive testing by the analysis of fetal DNA or RNA in maternal blood would circumvent these risks and might herald the more widespread use of prenatal genetic testing.\(^{59}\) As a result of the ease with which maternal and fetal D status can be determined serologically, \textit{RHD} genotyping has been used as a test bed to explore the use of noninvasive methods.

7.4.1 Detection of fetal RHD targets in genomic DNA extracted from fetal leukocytes in maternal blood

Using a sensitive ‘nested’ PCR approach, Lo et al. showed that D-specific PCR products could be amplified from DNA derived from leukocytes isolated from the blood of D-negative women with D-positive fetuses.\(^{60}\) The nature of the fetal cells in the maternal circulation was not identified but subsequent studies showed that they presumably included erythroid and lymphoid cells as well as fetal trophoblasts.\(^{59}\) A significant disadvantage of this approach was the inability to demonstrate positively the D-negative genotype (i.e. the absence of the \textit{RHD} gene). Negative test results might indicate the presence of a D-negative fetus or the absence of fetal DNA in the test sample. Thus, it is unlikely that this methodology will be used in clinical practice.

7.4.2 The detection of fetal RhD cDNA derived from RNA extracted from maternal blood

The detection of fetal RhD mRNA via synthesis of cDNA was first described by Hamlington et al.\(^{61}\) The method was found to have an overall accuracy of 75% on analysis of 96 D-negative women, but was less reliable early in pregnancy.\(^{62}\) Using a similar approach, Al-Mufti et al.\(^{63}\) correctly identified 28 of 35 RhD-positive fetuses using a CD71-sorted fraction of cells from maternal peripheral blood, followed by RNA extraction and cDNA synthesis. They concluded that the mRNA detection procedure is more sensitive than the detection of fetal genomic DNA in maternal peripheral blood. Clearly, this methodology has some merit, but it is
unclear if it can be successfully applied to clinical diagnosis because RNA samples tend to be extremely unstable and are rapidly degraded. Furthermore, in common with techniques based on the analysis of fetal DNA, the high error rate associated with this technique highlights the fundamental requirement for an internal control to demonstrate the presence of fetal cells. Finning et al.\textsuperscript{64} attempted to develop a suitable control for this method based on the detection of epsilon (i.e. fetal) globin mRNA, but, unfortunately, significant amounts of epsilon globin mRNA were also present in some adults.

### 7.4.3 Detection of fetal RHD targets in genomic DNA extracted from maternal plasma

Lo et al.,\textsuperscript{65} using DNA extracted from maternal plasma, were first able to demonstrate the presence of fetal Y chromosomes in maternal blood. These studies were later extended to include the analysis of \textit{RHD} blood group genes.\textsuperscript{66,67} The methods that were exploited to detect fetal DNA included real-time PCR (Taq-man\textsuperscript{TM} chemistry) and normal liquid-phase PCR. The advantages of this technique include the fact that fetal DNA is rapidly degraded \textit{postpartum}. This reduces the risk of falsely typing a D-negative fetus as D positive due to the presence of D-positive DNA from a previous pregnancy. In one study, it was found that the mean half-life for fetal DNA in maternal blood was 16.3 minutes, and that most women had undetectable levels of Y chromosome DNA 2 hours after delivery.\textsuperscript{68} The origin of fetal DNA in maternal plasma is unclear, but it may be derived from the breakdown of fetal trophoblasts. The level of fetal DNA in maternal plasma has been reported to range between 0.39\% and 11.9\% of total DNA.\textsuperscript{69}

Further work is required to develop appropriate controls for procedures such as those described above before the tests may reliably be used for fetal genotyping.

### 7.5 Future perspectives

The first few years of the third millennium are seeing the completion of the human genome project. The billionth base pair was deposited in October 1999, the complete sequence of chromosome 22 was published in December 1999 and a first draft of the complete human sequence was completed shortly thereafter. The completion of this project is precipitating the widespread development of rapid throughput tests for the diagnosis of genetic disposition to certain diseases. The technology that is being used for these types of analyses is developing at an astounding pace. Perhaps the most significant of these developments is DNA microarraying where tens of thousands of individual spots of DNA probes can be placed on microscope slides. These DNA probes (either oligonucleotides or cDNAs) are spatially addressed, and, when probed with genomic DNA or cDNA, can identify the presence of certain alleles or the expression of specific mRNAs. This technology can be
readily adapted to such areas as fetal genotyping and will enable the detection of rare partial and weak D alleles.

7.6 References

Fetal genotyping


Laboratory assays to determine the severity of haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn

Andrew G Hadley
International Blood Group Reference Laboratory, Bristol, UK

8.1 Introduction
The clinical management of alloimmunized pregnancies relies on the use of laboratory assays first to screen for the presence of blood group antibodies and then, once detected, to forecast their potential clinical significance. Screening is discussed in Chapter 3. This chapter considers laboratory tests that measure or characterize blood group antibodies in an attempt to forecast the severity of fetal haemolysis and to identify those cases where amniocentesis or percutaneous fetal umbilical cord blood sampling may be warranted in order to determine more directly the extent of fetal haemolysis. These invasive procedures carry risks, such as transplacental haemorrhage leading to exacerbation of maternal alloimmunization and the worsening of fetal anaemia (Chapter 10). It is important, therefore, that laboratory assays should reliably predict disease severity because failure to do so will expose some pregnancies to these risks unnecessarily.

Numerous techniques have been developed to predict the severity of HDFN. These assays may be serological, quantitative or cellular in nature. In all cases, the aim is to establish thresholds of antibody activity or trends in activity which are predictive of fetal haemolysis. This chapter discusses the advantages and limitations of these approaches, emphasizing the need for a structured and sequential application of assays of increasing complexity in order to generate clinically useful information in a cost-effective manner.

8.2 Serological assays
The majority of antibodies which cause HDFN do not agglutinate red cells suspended in saline. Red cells suspended in saline tend to repel one another and the maximum distance between the lipid bilayers of red cell membranes is approximately 30 nM. The maximum distance between the two antigen-binding
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fetal outcome</th>
<th>Samples tested</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unaffected</td>
<td>Affected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titres* ≤8 in 154 of 161 cases</td>
<td>Titres* &gt;8 in 27 of 34 cases</td>
<td>Samples taken during week 32; first immunized pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titres* &lt;64 in 78 of 106 cases</td>
<td>Titres* &gt;64 in nine of nine cases</td>
<td>Samples taken during week 32; immunized during a previous pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titres &lt;32 in five of seven cases</td>
<td>Titres ≥32 in 19 of 22 cases</td>
<td>Data refer to highest titre from each case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titres &lt;32 in 10 of 10 cases</td>
<td>Titres ≥32 in nine of 10 cases requiring exchange transfusion, and 19 of 19 cases requiring IUT</td>
<td>Not stated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not stated</td>
<td>Titres greater than the normal range in 12 of 25 ‘severely affected’ cases</td>
<td>Samples taken during 32nd week of gestation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not stated</td>
<td>Titres greater than the normal range in 13 of 24 ‘severely affected’ cases</td>
<td>Samples taken at end of gestation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titres &lt;64 in 106 of 146 cases</td>
<td>Titres ≥64 in 33 of 33 cases requiring exchange transfusion</td>
<td>Samples taken within 2 weeks of delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titres &lt;16 in 17 of 83 cases</td>
<td>Titres ≥16 in 128 of 133 cases requiring exchange transfusion</td>
<td>Data refer to highest titre from each case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titres &lt;32 in nine of 19 cases</td>
<td>Titres &gt;32 in 20 of 23 cases requiring exchange transfusion or IUT</td>
<td>Samples taken &lt;54 days (mean 7 days) before delivery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
IUT = intrauterine transfusion.
* = titre by agglutination in albumin.
sites on IgG is 14 nM and, so, IgG antibodies to antigens close to the lipid bilayer (anti-D, for example) cannot crosslink between red cells and cause haemagglutination.\textsuperscript{1}

Suspension of red cells in saline containing a colloidal medium such as bovine serum albumin or treatment of red cells with enzymes such as papain, trypsin or bromelian reduces their negative charge and renders them susceptible to haemagglutination by IgG anti-D.\textsuperscript{2,3} However, methods based on the use of colloidal media or enzymes also detect IgM antibodies and are not ideally suited to the characterization of the level of IgG antibodies which are the causative agent in HDFN. Assays using enzyme-modified red cells are relatively sensitive and antibodies reactive solely in these assays do not cause HDFN.\textsuperscript{4,5} However, some workers consider these assays to have a role in the early detection of antibodies which may then be followed during pregnancy in case they subsequently become detectable in the indirect antiglobulin test.\textsuperscript{6}

The indirect antiglobulin test uses an anti-IgG reagent to agglutinate IgG-sensitized red cells. The titration of antisera in the indirect antiglobulin test may, therefore, be used to indicate the level of IgG blood group antibodies; antisera are generally titrated by doubling dilution. Dilutions of antisera and red cells are usually incubated at 37°C, and the titre of the antibody taken as the reciprocal of the highest dilution which gives haemagglutination after the addition of antiglobulin reagent. Suitable methods for this purpose have been described in detail elsewhere.\textsuperscript{7} Titration studies to monitor antibody levels should begin during the first trimester or as soon as the antibody is detected in order to establish baseline values for comparison with titres obtained later in the pregnancy. Titrations should be performed every 2–4 weeks to reveal trends in antibody levels which help to predict the severity of fetal haemolysis. Recommendations for the use of serological testing during pregnancy have been prepared by several expert committees, including the American Association of Blood Banks\textsuperscript{8} and the British Committee for Standards in Haematology.\textsuperscript{9}

Although antibody titration is an inherently imprecise procedure, the technique does provide an indication of risk when performed under standardized conditions by experienced personnel. HDFN is uncommon in babies from women with anti-D titres of less than 16. In the USA, a ‘critical titre’ of 16 is generally accepted as an indicator of the need for direct fetal monitoring.\textsuperscript{8} Others have questioned the safety of basing clinical management on the use of a critical titre of 16; van Dijk et al. found that 20% of anti-D antibodies with titres of less than 16 were associated with cases requiring exchange transfusion.\textsuperscript{10} Critical titres for antibodies other than anti-D have not been established; anti-K, for example, may cause fetal anaemia at low titres.\textsuperscript{11} Table 8.1 summarizes the data from several studies which have evaluated the accuracy with which anti-D titres forecast fetal outcome.
8.3 Quantitative assays

Given the imprecision of estimating antibody concentration by titration, several quantitative assays have been developed to measure more accurately the level of red cell-binding IgG anti-D in maternal serum. Assays based on the use of flow cytometry,\textsuperscript{15} ELISA,\textsuperscript{18,19} and radioimmunoassay\textsuperscript{14} have all been reported to correlate with clinical severity better than antibody titration by indirect antiglobulin test. However, these assays are not used routinely.

In the UK, levels of anti-D (and sometimes anti-c) are generally quantified by AutoAnalyzer.\textsuperscript{20} This apparatus mixes red cells, an enzyme such as bromelain and an agent to potentiate haemagglutination such as methyl cellulose and serum. The mixture is passed through incubation coils and then settling coils which allow agglutinated red cells to be separated from nonagglutinated cells. The nonagglutinated cells are then lysed and passed through a colourimeter which measures the released haemoglobin.

It is generally accepted that AutoAnalyzer results have a greater predictive value than titration results. However, there are few published comparisons of the two techniques and the greater predictive value of the AutoAnalyzer may be marginal.\textsuperscript{21} Nevertheless, the AutoAnalyzer has several advantages over manual titration. It offers the ability to process a larger number of samples with greater reproducibility than is possible using manual titration.\textsuperscript{20} Severe HDFN is very rare in women with anti-D levels of less than 4 IU/ml (or 0.8 \(\mu\)g/ml).\textsuperscript{22} However, the converse does not hold, and several studies have found that antibody levels above 6 IU/ml are commonly found in cases where the infant is unaffected.\textsuperscript{22,23} Importantly, the reproducibility of the AutoAnalyzer allows small increases in antibody concentration to be identified and this commonly indicates a worsening of fetal anaemia. Nicolaides and Rodeck found that fetal anaemia developed within 2–3 weeks when maternal anti-D concentrations increased by 15 IU/ml.\textsuperscript{24}

8.4 Cellular assays

The failure of quantitative assays to predict reliably disease severity presumably reflects the various factors, in addition to antibody concentration, which influence disease severity (Section 1.3.2). Important among these factors may be differences in the functional or biological activity of antibodies from different individuals. The functional activity of antibodies is amenable to evaluation by the use of cellular assays which measure the ability of maternal antibodies to promote interactions between red cells and either monocytes or K lymphocytes. The basis of these assays is shown diagrammatically in Figure 8.1.

The adherence and phagocytosis of red cells by monocytes is measured in the
monocyte monolayer assay (MMA), the metabolic response of monocytes to sensitized red cells may be measured in the chemiluminescence test (CLT) and the lysis of red cells by monocytes or K lymphocytes is measured in antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity assays, with monocytes (M-ADCC) or K lymphocytes (K-ADCC) as effector cells.

Monocytes and K lymphocytes differ in the way they interact with IgG-sensitized red cells; monocyte-based assays reflect the interaction of IgG anti-D-sensitized red cells with Fcγ receptor I while K lymphocyte-based assays reflect interactions with Fcγ receptor III. Monocyte-based assays preferentially detect IgG3 antibodies while the K-ADCC assay is sensitive to poorly characterized functional differences between antibodies which are not revealed in monocyte-based assays.

Although K lymphocytes are unlikely to participate significantly in red cell destruction in utero, the functional heterogeneity of different human monoclonal IgG1 anti-Ds in the K-ADCC assay correlates with their ability to promote the binding of red cells to macrophages via Fcγ receptor III in cryostat sections of human spleen.

8.4.1 The K lymphocyte-mediated ADCC assay
The K-ADCC assay was the first cellular test to be evaluated for the potential to predict the severity of HDFN. The assay involves the treatment of red cells with a proteolytic enzyme such as bromelain or papain. The red cells are then labelled with 51-sodium chromate (51Cr) and added to peripheral blood mononuclear cells (depleted of monocytes by adherence) and serum. The mixture of red cells, serum and lymphocytes is incubated for 4–16 hours at 37°C and then the 51Cr released...
from lysed red cells into the supernatant is determined using a gamma counter. Lysis is usually expressed as a percentage of maximum lysis in the presence of a detergent such as Triton X100.

Urbaniak et al. investigated a relatively small sample of 10 women with high levels of anti-D and showed that results from the K lymphocyte-mediated ADCC assay discriminated those women whose babies had mild HDN from those with severe HDN. The K-ADCC assay has also been used to predict the severity of HDFN due to anti-c. In contrast to these reports, Hadley et al. did not find a correlation between results from the K-ADCC assay and the severity of HDFN.

8.4.2 The monocyte-mediated ADCC assay
The M-ADCC assay is somewhat similar to the K lymphocyte-mediated assay except that peripheral blood mononuclear cells are used as effector cells and red cells are washed after sensitization because fluid-phase serum IgG inhibits interactions between red cell-bound IgG and Fcγ receptor I. The release of $^{51}$Cr from damaged red cells may be increased by the addition of hypotonic saline.

The M-ADCC assay has been evaluated in a number of retrospective and prospective studies. In a prospective study of 482 women with anti-D and D-positive fetuses, results from the M-ADCC assay correlated with disease severity better than titration results by indirect antiglobulin test or flow cytometric quantitation of red cell-bound IgG. Moreover, in no cases in which M-ADCC assay results remained below a critical level until delivery did the infants suffer from severe HDFN. Based on these data, the M-ADCC assay has been used routinely in the Netherlands to assess cases of maternal alloimmunization to D.

8.4.3 The monocyte monolayer assay
The monocyte monolayer assay involves the microscopic evaluation of red cell adherence and phagocytosis by adherent monolayers of monocytes. In brief, mononuclear cells are separated from blood by density gradient centrifugation and monocyte monolayers are prepared by incubating mononuclear cells in Chamber Slides; nonadherent lymphocytes are then removed by aspiration. Sensitized red cells are then added to the monolayer and incubated for 1 hour at 37°C. The slides are then rinsed to remove nonadherent red cells and the cells stained with Wright/Giemsa. Monocytes are examined microscopically and the frequency of cells with adherent or phagocytosed red cells is estimated.

The superiority of the monocyte monolayer assay over manual titration with respect to predicting the severity of HDFN has been reported. Assays with over 20% active monocytes predicted the requirement for treatment in 95% of cases; results less than 20% predicted a lack of requirement for treatment in 83% of cases.
Monocyte monolayer assay results were also reported to be a better predictor of disease severity than analysis of amniotic fluid. However, other studies have not corroborated these findings. Moreover, monocyte monolayer assay results appear to be very dependent on antibody subclass and false-positive results tend to be associated with sera containing mostly IgG3 anti-D.

8.4.4 The chemiluminescence test

The CLT involves the incubation of sensitized red cells and monocytes in the presence of luminol which converts the metabolic biproducts of phagocytosis into light (chemiluminescence). The light is then measured in a luminometer.

Several retrospective and prospective studies have shown that results from the CLT correlate with fetal outcome better than results from the AutoAnalyzer. Results from some of these studies are summarized in Table 8.2. However, it does not necessarily follow that results from the CLT can or should affect clinical management. In a 5-year prospective study involving 132 women with D-positive fetuses and over 5 IU/ml anti-D, the CLT correctly predicted outcomes more often than the AutoAnalyzer (84.9% of cases compared with 71.2% of cases, $P < 0.01$). Of 56 women managed at a single fetal medicine centre, 30 women had between one and five amniocenteses. Seven women received a total of 15 amniocenteses which were deemed ‘negative’ because the babies were unaffected by HDFN and absorbance OD$_{450}$ results corresponded to Liley zones 1 or low 2. In retrospect, it would have been preferable had these procedures been avoided. When used to analyse maternal blood taken within 7 days of these amniocenteses, CLT results were consistently negative (less than 30%) while AutoAnalyzer results were less than 15 IU/ml in only six instances. Twenty-one women whose babies were severely affected by HDFN received a total of 43 amniocenteses, giving results consistent with fetal haemolysis (Liley zones 2M–3). CLT results were above 30% in 36 instances, but falsely predicted a lack of haemolysis in seven instances. Results from the AutoAnalyzer were similar, correctly predicting haemolysis in 35 instances, but falsely predicting a lack of haemolysis in eight cases. Overall, the CLT results were a better predictor of the appropriateness of amniocentesis ($P < 0.01$).

In conclusion, it seems reasonable to use CLT results over 30% to prompt amniocenteses even when anti-D levels by AutoAnalyzer are less than 15 IU/ml; such results were invariably associated with haemolysis. This conclusion is subject to the caveat that the CLT would be expected to prompt ‘inappropriate’ amniocenteses in rare cases with blocking antibodies or defective placental transfer of IgG (Section 1.3.2.8). However, it is probably less safe to use negative CLT results as the basis for not performing amniocenteses.
8.5 A strategy for antenatal testing

A primary aim of laboratories involved in antenatal testing is to provide obstetricians with clinically useful information in the most cost-effective manner. Information may be regarded as ‘clinically useful’ when it improves the appropriateness and timeliness of the invasive monitoring procedures – which remain the only way of establishing actual fetal haemolysis. Laboratory testing is performed against a background where most antibodies detected antenatally do not cause HDFN. Thus, cost-
effectiveness derives in part from a structured approach to testing so that the more technically demanding assays are selectively provided for 'at-risk' pregnancies.

Serological screening is appropriate for all pregnant women in order to detect the presence of red cell antibodies (reviewed in Chapter 3). Antibody titration by the indirect antiglobulin test may be appropriate when the specificity of an antibody indicates the potential to be clinically significant. Quantitation of anti-D by AutoAnalyzer is preferred in the UK; quantitation is best suited to regional centres with a proven record of reproducibility. Functional or cellular assays should be used only for those relatively rare women with anti-D levels over 5 IU/ml whose fetuses are at risk of moderate or severe disease and who have probably been referred to a fetal medicine centre specializing in the management of HDFN. In these rare cases, cellular assays may provide additional information. Significant CLT or M-ADCC assay results might prompt direct fetal monitoring when anti-D concentrations are in the 'grey area' between 5 and 30 IU/ml. Negative M-ADCC results might be used to prevent or postpone amniocenteses. Cellular assays are specialized tests which need to be performed regularly and validated carefully. Given the rarity of cases requiring these tests, quality and cost-effectiveness are best achieved by providing these assays from specialist reference laboratories.

8.6 References

Severity of haemolytic disease: laboratory assays


Assessing the severity of haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn: clinical aspects

Sherif Abdel-Fattah and Peter Soothill
St. Michael’s Hospital, Bristol, UK

9.1 Introduction

With the established use of postnatal anti-D prophylaxis for D-negative women, together with its increasing use for routine antenatal prophylaxis, the incidence of sensitization to D has markedly fallen. This is reflected by the reduction in the overall number of cases of HDFN (Section 5.3.2). However, women with low antibody levels or in their first sensitized pregnancies continue to be referred to tertiary fetal medicine units for specialized management. Considerable effort is, therefore, spent by fetal medicine specialists in monitoring the disease course, predicting its progression and deciding on the need and timing of intrauterine transfusions.

The most accurate test to assess the degree of fetal anaemia, and thus the need for transfusion, is direct fetal haemoglobin measurement by fetal blood sampling. However, cordocentesis can cause an increase in the antibody concentration and is associated with about a 1% fetal loss rate and so is not an appropriate first-line investigation. Fetal blood sampling is best reserved for cases where severe fetal anaemia is already suspected and so intrauterine transfusion is likely to follow. At amniocentesis, the needle is rarely passed transplacentally and, therefore, the risk of boosting the antibody level is less than with cordocentesis, although the procedure still has small but significant risks of causing miscarriage or preterm labour. In recent years, several noninvasive methods for the prediction of fetal anaemia have been assessed and these are now allowing the use of invasive testing to be deferred, usually until transfusion is necessary.

In this chapter, the methods used to predict fetal anaemia, both invasive and noninvasive, will be discussed.

9.2 Noninvasive assessment

9.2.1 Previous obstetric history

In a woman’s first sensitized pregnancy, the risk of significant fetal anaemia is low and fetal hydrops is a rare occurrence. The disease tends to become more severe
with each subsequent pregnancy, with fetal anaemia occurring at a progressively earlier gestational age. This is likely to be due to the antibody-boosting effect of small fetomaternal haemorrhages during pregnancy and at delivery. Also, if hydrops has occurred in one pregnancy, it is very likely to occur again and it has been estimated that, once hydrops or a stillbirth has occurred from HDFN due to anti-D, there is a 90% chance that the next D-positive fetus, if untreated, will die in utero. It has also been estimated that, after one previous stillbirth at term, subsequent stillbirths in utero will usually (>50%) occur before 35 weeks’ gestation, but, after more than one stillbirth, before 32 weeks.

A long-standing ‘rule of thumb’ for the management of patients with a previous affected pregnancy is to aim to time the first intervention approximately 10 weeks before the earliest previous intrauterine transfusion, fetal or neonatal death, or birth of a severely affected baby. The reason for this policy is that, at this time interval, the fetus will often be anaemic but hydrops is unlikely to have developed. It is important to note that fetal death or hydrops due to red cell alloimmunization before 18 weeks’ gestation is exceptionally rare. Therefore, in the absence of hydrops, cordocentesis should not be attempted before this gestational age, particularly because the fetal loss rate is significantly higher when the procedure is undertaken before 20 weeks.

9.2.2 Antibody levels

All pregnant women should have their blood group status determined and have an antibody screen at their first antenatal visit. For D-negative women with no evidence of sensitization at booking, it is common practice in the UK to repeat the antibody screen at 28 and 34 weeks. Details of the various screening tests and laboratory aspects of measuring and characterizing red cell antibodies are described elsewhere (Section 3.3 and Chapter 8). In this chapter, the clinical use of the serological information generated in the management of red cell-alloimmunized pregnancies will be considered.

9.2.2.1 Anti-D

The maternal serum antibody titre is a guide to the severity of the disease, but this test is most useful in either first sensitized pregnancies or in those with only mildly affected previous pregnancies. Although there are variations between laboratories, each should report the titre below which severe fetal haemolytic disease is considered unlikely (usually 1:32) and above which further investigations and monitoring are indicated. When the titre is below the threshold, it should be repeated initially every 2–4 weeks and with increasing frequency towards the end of the pregnancy. If the threshold is crossed, the antibody titre becomes an inadequate measure to rely on for management, although a rapid rise should always be taken
as an indication of severe disease. Automated methods (Section 8.3) for measuring anti-D levels have been developed. Results from these methods are more precise than titres; levels of anti-D are reported in terms of μg/ml or IU/ml (1 IU = 5 μg). An anti-D titre of 1:32 is approximately 4 IU/ml. It has been suggested that amniocentesis is only indicated if the levels exceed 4 IU/ml and, in more than 1200 sensitized pregnancies, the fetus was likely to be only minimally affected at levels less than 4 IU/ml (less than 5% of neonates required exchange transfusion for hyperbilirubinaemia). The risks of more serious fetal disease increased with the antibody level and, at more than 10 IU/ml, the chances of the pregnancy being seriously affected increased greatly and either invasive testing or delivery if the pregnancy had exceeded 36 weeks were indicated.

More recently, a cross-sectional study of 237 pregnancies between 17 and 38 weeks’ gestation determined the association between maternal anti-D levels and fetal haemoglobin. With maternal anti-D levels of less than 15 IU/ml, the fetus was, at most, mildly anaemic with a haemoglobin deficit of less than 3 g/dl, while, when the levels were over 15 IU/ml, the risk of severe fetal anaemia was high. It was also reported that, with an anti-D concentration of less than 5 IU/ml, the possibility of fetal anaemia is only 3%, but, with levels of 30 IU/ml or higher, there was at least a 59% chance of fetal anaemia and at least a 36% chance that the degree of anaemia was severe. It is, therefore, reasonable to reserve invasive testing for pregnancies with a maternal anti-D concentration of over 15 IU/ml. However, a steep rise in an antibody level between tests should be regarded as a strong indicator of increasing severity of the disease and a warning that intervention may be required soon. Also, antibody levels should be interpreted with all the other information and not used as a management cut-off alone.

Recently, there have been concerns about the considerable overlap between the ranges of anti-D levels in women whose fetuses were subsequently found to be severely affected, and in those with nonaffected fetuses. One reason for this overlap might be the presence of differences in biological activity of the antibodies in different women. The chemiluminescence test (CLT) is a cellular assay which can provide a measure of the biological activity of antibodies and, therefore, potentially their ability to promote the lysis of the fetal D-positive red cells (Section 8.4.4). Recent studies have shown that CLT results were able to predict the fetal outcome and haemoglobin deficit with greater precision than the anti-D levels measured by AutoAnalyzer. The clinical application of this test, particularly its potential role in avoiding invasive testing, requires further work.

9.2.2.2 Other red cell antibodies

There are at least 100 known red blood cell surface antigens other than the D antigen and some of them can cause HDFN. With the recent marked decline in the
incidence of alloimmunization to D due to the use of anti-D prophylaxis, a relative
increase in the proportion of cases of alloimmunization due to other antigens has
been noted. However, it is important to note that anti-D is still the most common
and important cause of haemolytic disease of the fetus. Antibodies to some of the
nonD antigens, especially anti-K, anti-c and anti-E, can cause severe fetal haemoly-
lytic disease and death and so require intrauterine transfusion and timed delivery,
as with anti-D. Other antibodies like anti-e, anti-C, anti-Fy\textsuperscript{a} and anti-Jk\textsuperscript{a} can cause
significant, but usually less severe, haemolytic disease.\textsuperscript{15–18} Severe haemolytic
disease due to other antibodies has only been described in sporadic case reports
(Section 2.7).

There are no routine methods at present to measure the levels of nonD anti-
bodies (except anti-c) and so assessment relies only on antibody titration. However,
the titres are not reliable predictors of the severity of the disease and no interven-
tion threshold titres have been identified so far, probably because of the relatively
small numbers of cases of severe disease with each antibody.\textsuperscript{19} The current
approach for managing these cases is by serial monitoring of the maternal titres
during the pregnancy, with further investigations considered if there are steep rises
of the titres. Cases with high-titre\textsuperscript{5} (over 64) antibodies of unknown disease poten-
tial should be investigated and monitored. The value of determining bilirubin levels
in amniotic fluid by absorbance measurement at a wavelength of 450 nm when
antibodies other than anti-D are present is unknown. However, they are certainly
unreliable in women with anti-K (Section 9.6.1), and earlier resort to fetal blood
sampling should be considered in these cases.

9.2.3 Ultrasound findings

9.2.3.1 Fetal hydrops

The sequence of events leading to the development of hydrops in severely anaemic
fetuses is not fully understood and several theories have been proposed. Severe
anaemia causes tissue hypoxia\textsuperscript{20} which further results in hypoxic endothelial
damage and increased capillary permeability. This may lead to protein loss into
the interstitial space, hypoproteinaemia and, consequently, ascites.\textsuperscript{21} Generalized
oedema follows and is associated with worsening hypoproteinaemia. In response
to red cell haemolysis and fetal anaemia, extramedullary haematopoiesis occurs
and erythropoietic islets may cause distortion of the hepatic parenchyma, so
increasing portal and umbilical venous pressures. This would impair hepatic
function and protein synthesis, resulting in severe hypoproteinaemia and
decreased colloid osmotic pressure which would further worsen the hydropic
process.\textsuperscript{22,23}

The presence of fetal hydrops in a red cell-alloimmunized case is a definite indi-
cation of severe fetal anaemia. The ultrasonographic features of hydrops include
ascites, pleural effusions, pericardial effusions, scalp oedema, subcutaneous oedema and polyhydramnious. For hydrops to develop, the haemoglobin deficit must be more than about 6 standard deviations below the normal mean for gestational age.\textsuperscript{24} Therefore, urgent intrauterine fetal transfusion is necessary once hydrops is detected. In alloimmunized pregnancies without fetal hydrops, weekly ultrasound scans can be used to detect early hydropic changes. The earliest sign on ultrasound scanning of anaemic hydrops (as opposed to other causes of hydrops, e.g. chromosomal abnormalities, cardiac anomalies, arrhythmias or structural thoracic abnormalities) is fetal ascites which appears as free fluid within the peritoneal cavity.

9.2.3.2 Prehydropic changes
There have been many attempts to identify sonographic features of fetal anaemia which occur before the development of fetal hydrops and, for example, visualization of both sides of the fetal bowel wall\textsuperscript{25} or polyhydramnious\textsuperscript{26} have been suggested. The mechanism for the development of polyhydramnious in anaemia is not clear, although it might be due to the hyperdynamic circulation resulting from the fetal anaemia, leading to increased glomerular perfusion and, so, fetal polyuria. One study has suggested that the earliest sonographic feature of haemolytic disease is enlargement of the heart, and especially the right atrium, as the fetal circulation adjusts to the decreased haemoglobin concentration.\textsuperscript{27} Another study proposed that enlargement of the fetal liver would compress the hepatic vessels, leading to decreased venous drainage of the umbilical vein and, therefore, umbilical vein dilatation.\textsuperscript{28} However, the correlation between several of these suggested parameters and the degree of fetal anaemia as assessed by fetal blood sampling was examined and all parameters were found to be unreliable in predicting fetal anaemia in the absence of hydrops.\textsuperscript{29}

9.2.3.3 Fetal liver and spleen size
Measurements of the liver and spleen have also been suggested as potentially reliable predictors of worsening fetal anaemia. The rationale behind this is that the liver is the major erythropoietic organ in the fetus from 8 weeks’ gestation onwards, with the bone marrow gradually taking over this role in the third trimester. The spleen is also an important additional erythropoietic site in the fetus, producing up to one-third of the red blood cells from about 18 weeks until term.\textsuperscript{30} Hepatosplenomegaly develops as extramedullary haematopoiesis increases in response to red cell haemolysis and is a well-known manifestation of haemolytic disease in newborns. In addition to its role in extramedullary erythropoiesis, splenomegaly may also be related to the rapid destruction of the antibody-coated red blood cells, which predominantly occurs in the spleen.
Two studies have described the measurement of the fetal liver length in a parasagittal plane and reported its usefulness as a predictor of fetal anaemia.\textsuperscript{31,32} Other studies measured the fetal splenic perimeter in a transverse plane of the abdomen and noted that splenomegaly in nonhydropic fetuses predicted a haemoglobin deficit of over 5 standard deviations from the normal for gestational age with a sensitivity of 94%. Splenomegaly was found to be an excellent predictor of severe fetal anaemia in cases with no previous transfusion, but the measurements did not correlate when there was a previous transfusion or with milder degrees of anaemia. There was also a trend towards a better correlation between splenomegaly and anaemia with advancing gestational age, suggesting that splenic measurements may be a more useful tool after 30 weeks’ gestation.\textsuperscript{30,33}

Although some of these results were encouraging, it appears that when high-quality Doppler measurements are available (Section 9.5) these morphometric measurements add little useful independent information for the prediction of anaemia. So, in conclusion, our current practice is to look very carefully for the earliest features of ascites rather than any other structural measurement or appearance.

\textbf{9.2.4 Fetal heart rate monitoring}

\textbf{9.2.4.1 Abnormal cardiotocography patterns}

Some of the most pathological fetal heart rate patterns on antepartum cardiotocography (CTG) have been associated with fetal anaemia. Good correlations between abnormal CTG patterns a few days before delivery and the level of umbilical cord haemoglobin, presence of hydrops and perinatal fetal loss have been noted, with a sinusoidal pattern and late decelerations being strongly associated with severe anaemia. However, these patterns are only evident in severe disease and are often preterminal.\textsuperscript{34,35}

The role of antepartum CTGs in detecting mild to moderate anaemia or anaemia at earlier gestational ages is less encouraging. An association has been noted between fetal anaemia in the second trimester (20–26 weeks’ gestation) and abnormal fetal heart rate patterns which include fetal tachycardia, reduced baseline variability and the presence of prolonged decelerations. However, the sensitivity of these pathological fetal heart rate patterns for predicting fetal anaemia was only 33%.\textsuperscript{36} Antepartum CTGs in third trimester pregnancies have been analysed according to 25 different classifications and the positive predictive values of abnormal fetal heart rate patterns to predict fetal anaemia ranged widely, according to the classification used, but the negative predictive value was always low.\textsuperscript{37} Although a common association between sinusoidal fetal heart rate pattern and severe fetal
anaemia is consistently found, most moderately anaemic fetuses were noted to have normal reactive CTGs.38

9.2.4.2 Computerized analysis

One potential problem with CTG interpretation is that it is subjective and prone to inter- and intraobserver variation. The usefulness of computerized analysis of short- and long-term fetal heart rate variability to predict mild to moderate fetal anaemia has been assessed to avoid the possible effects of subjective interpretation. A strong correlation between fetal heart rate variability and fetal haematocrit have been found even after adjusting for the effects of gestational age. When short-term variation was less than 5 ms or the long-term variation was less than 30 ms, the positive predictive values for fetal haematocrit of less than 30 were 85% and 90%, and the negative predictive values were 56% and 57%, respectively. The extent of the reduction in fetal heart rate variation was also positively correlated with the degree of fetal anaemia. However, there were false-negative cases and it was concluded that anaemia cannot be excluded by normal fetal heart rate variation.39

In our view, antepartum CTGs are of very limited use in the monitoring of fetuses at risk of developing anaemia. In addition, abnormal fetal heart rate patterns, including reduced variability, are also associated with various other fetal pathological conditions like intrauterine growth restriction and pre-eclampsia, and these conditions should be carefully excluded before assuming that the abnormal patterns are due to fetal anaemia.

9.2.5 Fetal Doppler ultrasonography

Doppler ultrasonography is a noninvasive method of studying fetal haemodynamics. While studies of the uterine and umbilical arteries give information on the perfusion of the placental circulations, results from the vessels supplying fetal organs can detect the haemodynamic changes that occur in response to pathological conditions. In normal pregnancy, the mean blood velocity in the descending thoracic aorta, common carotid artery and middle cerebral arteries increases with gestational age, possibly reflecting a progressive increase in cardiac output to fulfil the demands of the growing fetus.40 The ideal measurement to describe both the physiological fetal haemodynamics and their changes in response to pathological conditions such as anaemia would be the absolute volume flow in a particular vessel. Volume flow (Q) is calculated from the product of the time-averaged mean velocity and the cross-sectional area of the vessel lumen. However, a large degree of error was found to occur with these measurements, particularly in relation to the vessel diameter, which is further compounded when the measurement is cubed in the equation to derive the flow. Therefore, these have been largely replaced by the
time-averaged mean velocity (TAV) (the area under the spectral curve), the time-averaged maximum velocity (the average of the velocities making the spectral curve) and the peak systolic velocity (the maximum Doppler shift at the peak of the spectral curve).\textsuperscript{41–43}

In theory, the concept of Doppler blood velocity evaluation being useful in the identification of anaemic fetuses is mainly based on the assumption of decreased blood viscosity with a decrease in fetal red blood cell count. Direct measurement of blood viscosity is technically difficult,\textsuperscript{44,45} but decreased viscosity should result in an increase of peak blood velocity measurable by Doppler. It is likely that this effect will be more pronounced in the central part of the cardiovascular system such as the cardiac outflow tracts and the descending aorta.\textsuperscript{46} Early studies were difficult to assess because of a mixture of methodologies used. Kirkinen et al.\textsuperscript{47} reported a close correlation between umbilical venous blood flow and postpartum haematocrit in cases of immunization to D. Griffin et al.\textsuperscript{48} noted a weak relationship of uncertain clinical significance between the time-averaged maximal velocity in the descending aorta and the haematocrit. Rightmire et al.\textsuperscript{49} found a significant negative correlation between the fetal haematocrit and the time-averaged mean velocity in the fetal aorta. In contrast, Copel et al.\textsuperscript{50} reported that peak aortic velocity indices appeared to be of limited usefulness in the prediction of the need for transfusion.

9.2.5.1 Fetal aorta

The statistically significant negative correlation between fetal haemoglobin concentration and the Doppler blood flow velocities in the descending fetal aorta was further confirmed in later studies. The finding of a time-averaged mean velocity in the aorta above the normal range suggests that the fetus is probably anaemic, whereas, if the velocity is at or below the normal mean for gestation, anaemia is unlikely. Since the cross-sectional area of fetal vessels, including the aorta, does not change in the presence of anaemia, it was suggested that the increased velocity must reflect greater blood flow from increased cardiac output. The correlation between fetal anaemia and cardiac output is probably mediated, as it is in postnatal life, by an increase in stroke volume. This can be caused by several mechanisms including decreased viscosity, hypoxic peripheral vasodilatation and, therefore, decreased peripheral resistance, or hypoxic stimulation of chemoreceptors leading to more myometrial contractility.\textsuperscript{51}

The effectiveness of several ultrasonographic and Doppler parameters in the prediction of anaemia severity has been compared.\textsuperscript{52,53} Increased flow velocities in the descending thoracic aorta were consistently shown to be significantly associated with the degree of anaemia. However, one study of gestational age-dependent 95% confidence limits of peak aortic velocities found that the prediction of fetal anaemia
was possible with a sensitivity of 64%, specificity of 74%, positive predictive value of 73% and negative predictive value of 66%. The authors of this paper considered that these figures were too low to be clinically useful.

### 9.2.5.2 Middle cerebral artery

In 1990, Vyas et al. found an increase in the middle cerebral artery time-averaged mean blood velocity in cases of fetal anaemia. They suggested that this increase was the consequence of decreased blood viscosity and not due to peripheral vasodilatation as a compensatory mechanism for anaemic tissue hypoxia. In a larger study, an inverse relationship between the middle cerebral artery peak velocity and the haematocrit was found, with all anaemic fetuses having peak velocities above the normal mean for gestational age. The authors reported that, by relying on the middle cerebral artery peak velocity, up to one-half of cordocenteses they would have performed on previous policies could be avoided. The increase in fetal haematocrit following intrauterine transfusion also results in a rapid statistically significant reduction in the middle cerebral artery peak velocity.

A recent large multicentre study involving 110 pregnancies at risk of developing fetal anaemia due to red cell alloimmunization reported that moderate and severe fetal anaemia can be detected by an increased peak velocity in the middle cerebral artery, with a sensitivity of 100% and with a false-positive rate of 12%. They found that the optimal threshold values for the peak velocity were 1.29 times the median of gestational age for mild anaemia, 1.50 times the median for moderate anaemia and 1.55 times the median for severe anaemia. The authors also suggested that the agreement of results from different centres involved in the study indicated the reproducibility of this measurement. The middle cerebral artery was selected because cerebral arteries respond quickly to hypoxaemia, due to the strong dependence of brain tissue on oxygen and, so, fetal anaemia is expected to produce rapid haemodynamic changes in this vessel. This is recent confirmation that Doppler studies have an important place in the clinical management of these patients.

### 9.2.5.3 Splenic artery

Splenic artery Doppler has also been studied for the prediction of fetal anaemia. The spleen is a major site for the final destruction of fetal erythrocytes that have been damaged by circulating antibodies and also contributes to erythropoiesis in severe anaemia. One study described the measurement of an angle which reflects the average rate of deceleration during diastole (a straight line from the peak systole to the end of diastole) in the splenic artery Doppler waveform. The authors reported a statistically significant correlation between the extent of the reduction of this angle and the degree of fetal anaemia. However, the numbers were small (41
measurements in 22 pregnancies) and the false-negative rate was not reported. Larger numbers, as well as data on the reproducibility of this measurement, are essential before we can assume any clinical benefits.

9.2.5.4 Venous Dopplers

The role of fetal venous Doppler studies to detect anaemia has also been assessed. Hecher et al.\textsuperscript{52} studied the effect of fetal anaemia on the velocities in the ductus venosus, the right hepatic vein and the inferior vena cava, as well as the middle cerebral artery, the descending thoracic aorta and the atrioventricular valves, in 38 alloimmunized pregnancies. There was a trend for increased velocities in all venous and arterial vessels and increased diastolic peak velocities across the mitral and tricuspid valves. However, a statistically significant increase was found only for the velocities in the ductus venosus, thoracic aorta and middle cerebral artery. For these vessels, a regression analysis was performed and only the time-averaged mean velocity in the thoracic aorta was significantly associated with the degree of anaemia. The authors concluded that Doppler studies of the venous blood flow did not provide further information over and above the arterial measurements to allow the severity of fetal anaemia to be predicted. Another study\textsuperscript{59} found that ductus venosus time-averaged blood velocities were significantly higher in anaemic than normal fetuses and the velocities returned to normal values the day after a transfusion. Increased ductus venosus velocity was thought to indicate increased volume flow through the foramen ovale to the fetal brain as a compensatory mechanism to the decreased oxygen content caused by fetal anaemia. The return of the time-averaged blood velocity to normal the day after the transfusion reflected the corrected fetal haematocrit and increased blood viscosity, and, possibly, the return of normal cardiac contractility.\textsuperscript{59}

9.2.5.5 Overview of the use of Doppler

Multivariate regression analyses have been used to determine the best possible combination of various ultrasonographic and Doppler measurements to allow the prediction of the severity of fetal haemolytic anaemia. These included measurements of the fetal liver, spleen, umbilical vein diameter, placental thickness and Doppler measurements of umbilical venous maximum flow velocity and fetal aorta time-averaged mean velocities, together with anti-D antibody concentrations. Umbilical venous maximum velocity was found to be the most important single diagnostic parameter. While the information from the fetal aorta blood velocity measurements resulted in an improvement of the prediction equation, the morphological measurements were of no benefit.\textsuperscript{53,60} Careful attention to the previous obstetric history and serial antibody quantification is equally important.\textsuperscript{60}
9.3 Invasive testing

9.3.1 Amniocentesis

9.3.1.1 Amniotic fluid optical density

Bevis in 1952 demonstrated that the severity of fetal haemolytic disease can be predicted by serial amniocentesis. Bilirubin is an end product of fetal red cell destruction and, therefore, the fetus with haemolytic anaemia tends to have elevated serum bilirubin levels. Although most of the fetal bilirubin is removed via the placenta, a significant amount is excreted into the fetal urine and appears in the amniotic fluid. Bevis showed that an increase in the bilirubin levels in the amniotic fluid correlates with the degree of fetal anaemia.

In 1961, Liley suggested a management protocol for pregnancies complicated by anti-D by using the finding that the amniotic fluid bilirubin concentration can be quantified spectrophotometrically by the deviation in absorption at a wavelength of 450 nm ($\Delta$OD$_{450}$). He described three prognostic zones according to the outcome of pregnancy and the severity of the disease as assessed by the haemoglobin at delivery. Liley’s chart became the principal tool for the management of pregnancies complicated by alloimmunization to D for many years. Amniocentesis was performed when the maternal antibody level was more than 4IU/ml, or 10 weeks before the gestation at which the patient had had a previous fetal death or delivery of a severely affected baby. In the third trimester of pregnancy, the accuracy of predicting the severity of the disease by the Liley chart was high.

The major disadvantage of Liley’s chart is that it was devised for managing alloimmunized pregnancies in the third trimester. With the marked improvement in neonatal care and improved prognosis for very preterm babies over the last decade, management of these pregnancies gradually became more directed towards the second trimester. Attempts to extrapolate Liley’s curves backward, to be used in the second trimester, met with limited success. One study correlated fetal haemoglobin obtained by fetal blood sampling with $\Delta$OD$_{450}$ in pregnancies between 16 and 25 weeks’ gestation and found that 68% of fetuses who were severely anaemic and required intrauterine transfusions, including 10 hydropic fetuses, would have been misdiagnosed as only mildly to moderately affected (mid zone) by the extrapolated Liley chart. It was therefore concluded that the $\Delta$OD$_{450}$ measurement before 27 weeks’ gestation was not useful. What later became clear is that the relationship between $\Delta$OD$_{450}$ and gestational age in normal pregnancies is not linear and so the extrapolation was incorrect. Queenan and coworkers in 1993 produced normal $\Delta$OD$_{450}$ values between 14 and 40 weeks’ gestation and suggested a new chart with four zones for the management of anti-D alloimmunized pregnancies. The reliability of the Queenan chart has been studied, with conflicting reports resulting.
As described above, it is vital that the correct gestational age chart is used to interpret the results, but other technical problems can also occur. Contamination of the amniotic fluid with blood or meconium can cause marked differences in the reading – with serious implications, as these substances also absorb light at the same wavelength as bilirubin. In addition, bilirubin can undergo degradation by light and the specimen should, therefore, be transported to the laboratory in a light-resistant container. Also, this technique provides only an indirect assessment of the degree of fetal anaemia. Even without technical difficulties, disease severity varies at any given $\Delta OD_{450}$. Another issue is that the development of the use of $\Delta OD_{450}$ was only based on cases with anti-D alloimmunization. Alloimmunization to K results in a different pathophysiology and produces fetal anaemia more as a result of erythroid precursor suppression at the progenitor cell level, rather than haemolysis (Section 2.5.3). Therefore, fetuses of women with anti-K may have low serum and amniotic fluid bilirubin levels; if $\Delta OD_{450}$ is used in these cases, false reassurance is likely to be given.

### 9.3.1.2 Fetal blood group genotyping

Perhaps the most important advance in the assessment of alloimmunized pregnancies in recent years is the ability to genotype the fetus by using the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to analyse DNA derived from fetal amniocytes (Chapter 7). This technique is of great benefit when alloimmunized women have heterozygous partners – so that the fetus has a 50% chance of being antigen negative and therefore unaffected. Previously, the main approach to determining the fetal blood group status involved obtaining fetal blood through cordocentesis, with its associated risks. Amniocentesis to obtain fetal amniocytes avoids these risks and can be done at an earlier gestational age than cordocentesis, so a negative result can provide early reassurance that the fetus will be unaffected and unnecessary invasive procedures avoided. Alternatively, a positive result allows early antenatal management planning. Fetal blood sampling can then be scheduled with a view to a therapeutic procedure timed when the fetus is expected to be anaemic rather than as a diagnostic procedure for the presence or absence of anaemia. The option of termination of pregnancy at an early stage can also be a possibility for women with severe disease and a history of pregnancy losses as a result of alloimmunization.

Reports of the accuracy of the PCR technique in determining the fetal blood group status have been very encouraging. Although false-positive and false-negative rates were very low ranging between 0 and 1.5%, false results could have very serious clinical implications. Misdiagnosis of a fetus as D positive might be followed by further invasive testing, usually by cordocentesis, subjecting a D-negative fetus to unnecessary risks. Conversely, a diagnosis which falsely identifies
a D-positive fetus as D negative might lead to either omission or delay of the appropriate management with possible unfavourable outcome. Therefore, at present, the results of this technique should still be interpreted with a knowledge of the possibility of an incorrect result.

9.3.2 Fetal blood sampling

Fetal blood sampling was first undertaken with fetoscopic guidance, but cordocentesis under ultrasound guidance then became the standard technique and played a major role in the management of fetal haemolytic disease. The technique has obvious advantages when assessing a fetus at risk of developing anaemia. Direct measurement of the fetal haemoglobin and haematocrit gives definitive information on the severity of anaemia. In addition, tests indicating red cell antibody binding (Section 3.3.1), haemolysis and fetal erythropoietic response as well as blood grouping can be undertaken.

The indications for fetal blood sampling are similar to those used to decide when to perform the first amniocentesis for OD$_{450}$. These include a rapid rise in the maternal antibody level or its increase above the threshold for the local laboratory, a severe past obstetric history or signs suggestive of fetal anaemia on ultrasound scan or Doppler flow velocimetry. Cordocentesis can be performed as early as 18–20 weeks’ gestation. When sampling for this indication, equipment should be available on-site for rapid determination of the fetal haemoglobin and haematocrit within 1–2 minutes while the needle is still in the umbilical vein. If the fetus is found to be anaemic, intravascular fetal blood transfusion can then start immediately, which necessitates having blood ready for transfusion when cordocentesis is performed in these cases, thereby avoiding an extra invasive procedure.

9.3.2.1 Fetal haemoglobin and haematocrit

In normal pregnancies, the mean fetal haemoglobin increases linearly from 17 to 40 weeks’ gestation. The severity of red cell alloimmunization should be assessed and treated according to the deviation of the fetal haemoglobin from the normal mean for gestation. If the fetal haemoglobin is within 2 g/dl (2 standard deviations) of the normal and the direct antiglobulin test is positive, the fetus is only mildly affected and careful monitoring for increased severity is required rather than intrauterine transfusion or early delivery. Fetuses with haemoglobin deficit between 2 and 7 g/dl are moderately anaemic and require intrauterine blood transfusion. In fetuses with severe anaemia and ultrasonographic evidence of hydrops, the haemoglobin deficit is almost always over 7 g/dl and urgent intrauterine transfusion is required. These measurements are rightly regarded as the ‘gold-standard’ in the assessment of severity in red cell-alloimmunized cases.
9.3.2.2 Fetal blood reticulocyte, erythropoietin and erythroblast counts

Indicators of the fetal compensation to haemolysis can provide information about the disease severity, in addition to the haemoglobin concentration. Reference ranges of the fetal reticulocyte count and its changes in alloimmunized pregnancies have been reported by various authors.\textsuperscript{81–83} When fetuses are subjected to varying degrees of anaemia, they compensate by both cardiovascular adjustments and increased erythropoiesis. The erythroblast count is an indirect measure of extramedullary haematopoiesis, while reticulocytes are the products of both medullary and extramedullary erythropoiesis. The reticulocyte count increases linearly with fetal anaemia and has been found to have exceeded the 97.5th centile for gestational age when the fetal haemoglobin deficit was $>2$ g/dl. In contrast, when the erythroblast count exceeded the 97.5th centile for gestational age, the haemoglobin deficit was $>7$ g/dl.\textsuperscript{84} It appears that the fetus responds to mild or moderate degrees of anaemia by stimulating medullary haematopoiesis. As in postnatal life, this is associated with an increase in the proportion of immature erythrocytes (reticulocytes) released into the circulation. Extramedullary haematopoiesis in the fetal liver starts with severe anaemia which results in erythroblastosis.\textsuperscript{84} Indeed, fetal serum erythropoietin concentration was only found to be increased in cases of severe anaemia when the haemoglobin deficit was $>7$ g/dl, which indicates that tissue oxygenation is maintained in mild anaemia, probably through placental clearance of lactate and increased cardiac output and peripheral perfusion.\textsuperscript{20,85} However, fetal plasma erythropoietin does not seem to increase in response to even severe anaemia before 24 weeks’ gestation.\textsuperscript{86} Most importantly, the risk of developing anaemia in the following few weeks is increased when the reticulocyte count and direct antiglobulin test titre are elevated.\textsuperscript{82}

9.3.2.3 Fetal bilirubin levels

As already discussed, elevated serum bilirubin levels are expected in fetuses with active haemolysis. In normal pregnancies, umbilical venous total bilirubin increases progressively with advancing gestational age. Umbilical venous total bilirubin levels in antigen-positive fetuses were found to be inversely related to haemoglobin concentration and rose with gestational age at a rate significantly greater than expected.\textsuperscript{87} Bilirubin levels often exceeded the 97.5th centile before the development of fetal anaemia, although this may be slightly misleading because anaemia in this study\textsuperscript{87} was defined as a haematocrit $<30$ rather than a gestational age-adjusted centile. Although fetal bilirubin levels may be an indication of the risk of developing severe fetal haemolytic anaemia, this is unlikely to be clinically useful.
9.4 Conclusions

Noninvasive tests to predict fetal anaemia are of value not only in avoiding unnecessary invasive procedures but also in deciding on the appropriate timing of intervention in fetuses with severe disease. However, none of the tests described can alone provide a 100% accurate prediction, so the assessment of patients with this condition should be comprehensive and include all possible relevant information. The obstetric history and antibody levels should be taken into consideration together with the results of ultrasonographic and Doppler blood velocity examinations. In the absence of fetal hydrops, other ultrasonographic parameters and antepartum CTGs, when normal, are of very limited value in predicting the severity of fetal anaemia and, therefore, no management decisions should be undertaken on the basis of these tests alone. Doppler blood velocity studies appear to be the most valuable single noninvasive test.

Amniotic fluid $\Delta OD_{450}$ still has a role in providing information on the extent of fetal anaemia in the third trimester when noninvasive tests are not conclusive, particularly in a patient with a previous history of affected pregnancies and antibody levels suggestive of a progressive disease. Fetal blood group genotyping by amniocentesis should be a part of the routine management of pregnancies in sensitized women with heterozygous partners. Fetal blood sampling by cordocentesis allows direct assessment of the degree of fetal anaemia. Normal reference ranges are available for the relevant fetal blood indices, endproducts of red cell haemolysis (bilirubin) and indicators of erythropoiesis (erythropoietin and reticulocytes), and can, therefore, provide information on the extent of the disease and the fetal compensatory responses. Cordocentesis is most useful during the second trimester or when intrauterine transfusion is likely to be required.

9.5 References

5 Bowman JM (1994). Intrauterine and neonatal transfusion. In Scientific Basis of Transfusion


Antenatal therapy for haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn

Kenneth J Moise Jr and Paul W Whitecar
University of North Carolina School of Medicine, Chapel Hill, North Carolina, USA

10.1 Introduction

Intrauterine blood transfusion of anaemic fetuses represents one of the great successes of fetal therapy. The therapeutic success of other potential therapies for HDFN, such as plasmapheresis, intravenous immune globulin, immunoadsorption, oral tolerance and chemotherapeutic agents, has been met with more mixed views.

10.2 Plasmapheresis and intravenous immune globulin

10.2.1 Plasmapheresis

An interest in plasmapheresis for the in utero treatment of HDFN preceded the improved perinatal survival realized in the late 1980s with modern intrauterine transfusion techniques. Most of the literature has reported single cases or relatively small case series (Table 10.1). Many of the studies used the historical control of the outcome of the patient’s previous affected pregnancy to assess a therapeutic effect. In addition, plasmapheresis has often been combined with intrauterine transfusion or intravenous immune globulin (IVIG) making assessment of its effect more difficult. Despite these limitations, a review of the published cases reveals a perinatal survival of 69%. This would appear to warrant further scientific investigation into the use of plasmapheresis as an adjunct in the management of the severely allo-immunized patient. A randomized clinical trial was attempted by the Canadian Apheresis Study Group, but, unfortunately, insufficient enrolment necessitated premature termination of the study.

Reported protocols vary considerably but all involve repeated procedures due to a rebound increase in antibody titre. In animal studies, Bystryn and coworkers experimentally lowered antibody levels by exchange transfusion. Antibody levels were noted to rebound to over 200% of the initial levels with increases of up to 50–80% being seen even in the first 48 hours. Using weekly plasmaphereses,
Robinson and Tovey\textsuperscript{8} noted three different patterns of antibody titre equally distributed among their patients. Some patients were noted to have an initial suppression of their anti-D titre which then remained low throughout the gestation; a second group remained suppressed until 32 weeks’ gestation when a marked rise occurred. The titres in the third group remained high despite repeated procedures with a rapid rebound to pre-pheresis levels at short intervals. Interestingly, all cases exhibited a dramatic rise in titre after delivery ranging from 66\% to 1566\% of baseline.

Most reports suggest starting plasmapheresis after 12 weeks’ gestation. This approach seems reasonable in view of the documented transplacental passage of up to 60\% of maternal levels of IgG1 and 30\% of IgG3 antibodies by this gestation.\textsuperscript{21} Some authors advocate the removal of 2–3 l of plasma two to five times weekly,\textsuperscript{11} while others\textsuperscript{3} feel that smaller volumes (500 ml–1 l) removed once weekly produce less rebound in antibody titre. The plasma that has been removed requires replacement; saline, plasma protein fraction, D-negative plasma and albumin have all been

### Table 10.1 Reports of plasmaphereses for severe alloimmunization to D

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Number of patients</th>
<th>IVIG</th>
<th>Intrauterine transfusion</th>
<th>Number of fetal deaths</th>
<th>Number of neonatal deaths</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Besalduch et al., 1991</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odendaal et al., 1991</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-Omari, 1989</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berlin et al., 1985</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eklund, 1985</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Van’t Veer-Korthof et al., 1981</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hauth et al., 1981</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robinson &amp; Tovey, 1980</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James et al., 1979</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gunston et al., 1979</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graham-Pole et al., 1977</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilz et al., 1977</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fraser et al., 1976</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pole et al., 1974</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fias et al., 1973</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kovacs et al., 1973</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarke et al., 1970</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowman et al., 1968</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powell, 1968</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Overall perinatal survival: 64%.*
used as replacement. If plasmapheresis is to be used today, with modern concerns regarding viral transmission through blood products, albumin would seem to be the preferred fluid. Automated cell separators have been routinely used for the procedure. Citrate is employed in the machine’s extracorporeal circuit to prevent coagulation. Robinson and Tovey\(^8\) reported a 15% incidence of complications in 261 procedures in pregnant women. These included delayed vertigo, headache, allergic reaction to plasma, peripheral oedema and syncope; 10 cases involved mild citrate toxicity. The latter is usually heralded by circumoral paresthesia and can be treated with oral calcium. In some cases, intravenous calcium gluconate is required at the conclusion of the procedure.

The role for plasmapheresis today is probably limited to patients with a previous history of early perinatal loss and when technical limitations preclude successful intrauterine transfusion. In these cases, plasmapheresis may serve as a method to prolong the interval until an initial intrauterine transfusion can be undertaken.

### 10.2.2 Intravenous immunoglobulin

IVIG has been used effectively in the antenatal treatment of HDFN. In the largest series reported to date, Margulies and coworkers\(^22\) described the exclusive use of IVIG in 24 patients with severe HDFN. Over one-half of the patients had experienced a previous pregnancy with a fetal or neonatal death, with 12% of the previous pregnancies involving two or more perinatal losses. All patients in the series carried a D-positive fetus, three having undergone cordocentesis in the case of a heterozygous paternal genotype. Patients received a total dose of 2 g/kg of IVIG administered over 5 consecutive days (400 mg/kg/day); the dose was repeated at 2–3-week intervals throughout the pregnancy. The patients were divided into three groups based on gestational age at the initiation of IVIG therapy: less than 20 weeks’ gestation (group 1), 20–28 weeks’ gestation (group 2) and over 28 weeks’ gestation (group 3). There was a total of three fetal losses in groups 1 and 2. All three fetuses were noted to be hydropic at the start of therapy. There were no neonatal deaths, yielding a perinatal survival rate for the series of 88%. One-half of the neonates in group 1, one third in group 2 and 88% of group 3 required exchange transfusions leading the authors to conclude that IVIG is not effective if initiated after 28 weeks’ gestation. Interestingly, the maternal anti-D titres fell in all three groups, although this difference was not statistically significant in group 2.

In a follow-up case-controlled study of 69 patients, this same group of investigators compared the outcome of pregnancies that received IVIG prior to 20 weeks’ gestation in conjunction with subsequent intrauterine transfusion with the use of intrauterine transfusions only after 20 weeks.\(^23\) Again, the study group represented cases of severe HDFN in that 73% of the IVIG group and 56% of the intrauterine
transfusion group had experienced previous perinatal losses. Significant differences were noted between the groups. Hydrops at the first intrauterine transfusion occurred in 25% of the IVIG group as compared with 75% of the transfusion alone group (RR = 0.36). The first transfusion was performed a median of 1.5 weeks later in the patients who had received IVIG. Fetal death was 2.5-fold more likely in the transfusion-only group (51% versus 20%; RR = 0.39). Neonatal death occurred in 8% of the IVIG group as compared with 21% in the transfusion-only group, although this difference did not achieve statistical significance.

The mechanism of action of IVIG in cases of severe haemolytic disease is not well understood. At least three different explanations for its effect have been postulated: decreased production of maternal anti-red cell antibodies, decreased placental transport of antibodies and fetal reticuloendothelial blockade. Dooren and coworkers24 randomized 20 patients to receive either intravascular intrauterine transfusion alone or intrauterine transfusion in conjunction with the direct fetal infusion of IVIG. No significant differences in transfusion requirement or clinical outcome could be demonstrated between the two groups. However, the average fetal IVIG dose of 85 mg/kg was fairly low compared with the 500 mg/kg dose usually employed to treat neonatal HDFN.25 In a case report, Alonso and coworkers26 used a dose of IVIG of between 406 and 481 mg/kg and administered this directly to the fetus on four occasions at the time of cordocentesis. Fetal haematocrit was noted to increase and absorbance ΔOD(450) values decreased with advancing gestation. To further elucidate the protective mechanism of IVIG, one investigation compared six pregnancies treated with maternal IVIG with seven control sensitized women who were only followed with serial cordocenteses.27 No obvious inhibitory effect on the transplacental passage of anti-D or the maternal anti-D production was noted. Finally, Besalduch and coworkers1 reported a case in which IVIG was used in a patient with early hydrops fetalis secondary to anti-E alloimmunization. These authors used a pepsin-treated product resulting in a purified IgG preparation lacking Fc domains. Fetal hydrops and hepatosplenomegaly were noted to resolve with repeated administration. The authors postulated that effectiveness in their case was related to the suppression of maternal antibody levels since their product could not have crossed the placenta. Yu and Lennon28 have recently proposed a mechanism to explain the potential ability of IVIG to cause the accelerated catabolism of circulating anti-red cell antibodies. An intracellular Fc receptor abundant in endothelial cells normally binds the IgG that has entered the cell through pinocytosis and presents it back to the surface of the cell for release back into the microcirculation. In cases of excess circulating IgG secondary to IVIG, the protective intracellular Fc receptors become saturated allowing for the accelerated catabolism of free IgG molecules that enter the endothelial cells. These data would lead one to conclude that, given in sufficient doses, IVIG may exert its...
predominant therapeutic role by blocking the fetal reticuloendothelial system; a secondary role would be the suppression of the level of maternal antibody.

Currently, the authors’ centre offers a combination of plasmapheresis and IVIG to those patients with a previous fetal loss prior to 20 weeks’ gestation. This approach is based on a randomized trial of 383 adult patients with Guillain–Barré syndrome. In this trial, patients received one of three therapies: five plasmaphereses, 2g/kg IVIG, or five plasmaphereses followed by a 2g/kg course of IVIG. Patients in the latter group showed a trend towards more favourable outcome. In a case report, Berlin et al. used a combined plasmaphereses/IVIG approach when problems with continued venous access precluded continued plasmaphereses in the patient’s second pregnancy. A total of 10l of plasma was exchanged over 4 days at 25 weeks’ gestation. This was followed by an IVIG dose of 0.4g/kg/day over 5 consecutive days. The patient’s anti-D concentration became markedly reduced and did not return to pretreatment levels for 6–7 weeks. The infant was delivered at 35 weeks and was noted to have a cord haemoglobin of 12.5g/dl.

The authors’ protocol in a patient with severe red cell alloimmunization involves a single volume plasmapheresis every other day for three procedures in the 10th week of gestation. Albumin is used for volume replacement. After the third procedure, the patient is administered a 1g/kg loading dose of IVIG diluted in normal saline after 25mg of intravenous diphenhydramine HCl. The infusion is started at a rate of 60cm³/hour and increased by 30cm³/hour every 30 minutes to a maximum rate of 240cm³/hour. A second dose of 1g/kg is given the following day. The patient is then treated with a weekly dose of 1g/kg until 20 weeks’ gestation (Figure 10.1).
This dosing regimen gives plasma levels of IgG equivalent to the regimen of 0.4 g/kg daily for 5 days that has been previously used and is generally well tolerated. In the case of a heterozygous paternal genotype, an amniocentesis is undertaken at 15 weeks’ gestation and DNA-based techniques used to determine the fetal red cell antigen status (Section 7.3). Chorion villus biopsy is not used in these cases due to the risk of a secondary amnestic response to fetomaternal haemorrhage. Typical side-effects encountered during IVIG administration include urticaria and severe headache. We have found that premedication with 1000 mg of oral acetaminophen several hours prior to the scheduled infusion can prevent this latter complication. In some situations, a change to a different manufacturer will produce fewer reactions in some patients. On occasion, patients will complain of a desquamation of the palmar surface of the hands; the aetiology of this phenomenon is unknown. Standard noninvasive and invasive fetal testing is then used to determine the timing of the first intrauterine transfusion.

In the UK, plasmapheresis and IVIG are almost never used for the treatment of HDFN because of the high success rates of transfusion therapy. However, there is a consensus that plasmapheresis and IVIG are most likely to be of value in those patients with the most severe HDFN since they may lead to a delay in the requirement for very early transfusion and avoidance of the associated risks.

### 10.3 Intrauterine transfusion

#### 10.3.1 History

The first successful treatment for haemolytic disease of the fetus was described by Liley in 1963 when he introduced the technique of intraperitoneal transfusion. No further modifications in technique occurred until 1981. In that year, Rodeck and coworkers described the intravascular transfusion of the fetus by directing a needle into chorionic plate vessels under visualization through a fetoscope. The following year, a group in Denmark reported the intravascular transfusion of a fetus by umbilical venous puncture under ultrasound guidance. By 1986, two schools of thought had emerged regarding the optimal method for intravascular transfusion. A group of investigators at Yale proposed an exchange intravascular technique similar to that used to treat HDFN in the neonate. A second group at the Mount Sinai Medical Center in New York championed the direct intravascular transfusion approach. As more experience was gained with the two techniques, the direct intravascular transfusion became more widely adopted by many centres in the USA because it was associated with a shorter procedure time. Exchange transfusion was never taken up in Europe, mostly because the aim of exchange transfusion in the neonate is to reduce severe hyperbilirubinaemia and this is not relevant in the fetus because of the removal of bilirubin across the placenta. Interest in intravascular
transfusion led to a virtual abandonment of the intraperitoneal transfusion by most centres treating red cell alloimmunization.

**10.3.2 Access site**

Initial attempts to gain access to the fetal circulation utilized the umbilical cord insertion at the placental interface. The cord insertion proximate to the fetal umbilicus should be avoided as vagal innervation is thought to be present in this portion, increasing the likelihood of fetal bradycardia. Weiner and coworkers\(^36\) also noted that puncture of the midsegment of the umbilical cord was associated with a 2.5-fold higher incidence of fetal bradycardia as compared with puncture at the placental insertion. The vessel of interrogation should be the umbilical vein instead of one of the umbilical arteries. In one series of 750 diagnostic or therapeutic cordocenteses, the incidence of fetal bradycardia was 21% with puncture of the umbilical artery as compared with 3% with umbilical venous puncture.\(^36\) Several authors have conjectured that this may be due to spasm of the muscularis of the umbilical artery. In 1982, Bang and coworkers\(^33\) first described the use of the intrahepatic portion of the fetal umbilical vein as the site for intrauterine transfusion. In a subsequent series of 214 procedures, Nicolini and coworkers\(^37\) reported a 2.3% incidence of fetal bradycardia utilizing this approach. In an effort to detect hepatic damage, liver enzymes were measured in 13 fetuses transfused using the intrahepatic vein and compared with 13 control fetuses who underwent transfusion using the placental cord insertion. No differences were noted at the time of subsequent intrauterine transfusion. These authors proposed that the absence of the umbilical artery at the anatomical level of the intrahepatic vein explained their low incidence of fetal bradycardia. An additional advantage proposed by the authors was that blood loss from the cord puncture site would be minimized by absorption from the peritoneal cavity. Despite these theoretical advantages, intrauterine transfusion using the intrahepatic vein has been reported to be associated with an increase in the fetal stress hormones of noradrenaline, cortisol and beta-endorphin.\(^38,39\) Similar changes were not detected in these levels when the cord placental insertion was used as the site of transfusion. Puncture of the intrahepatic vein is technically more challenging than using the placental insertion, predominantly due to fetal movement. In addition, the fetus must present with its spine towards the maternal back to allow access. However, in cases of poor visualization of a cord insertion into a posterior placenta, the use of the intrahepatic vein is a viable option.

Direct cardiac puncture has been reported as a method of access for intrauterine transfusion, although it has been associated with a high rate of fetal death.\(^40\) In one series of 158 cases of diagnostic cardiocentesis for the prenatal diagnosis of haemoglobinopathies, the corrected fetal loss rate was 5.6%, significantly higher than the 1% loss rate generally quoted for cordocentesis.\(^41\)
10.3.3 Method of transfusion

Prior to the advent of intravenous transfusion, it was generally accepted that the hydropic fetus appeared unable to absorb red cells effectively from its peritoneal cavity after intraperitoneal transfusion. Harman and coworkers compared the experience at one referral centre between two time periods when either intravenous or intraperitoneal techniques were exclusively used. Patients were matched for severity of disease, placental location and gestational age at the start of transfusions. Several important outcome differences were noted. When the fetuses were divided into nonhydropic and hydropic groups at the time of the first transfusion, survival was only slightly improved in nonhydropic fetuses using intravenous transfusion (96%) as compared with intraperitoneal transfusion (83%). In the hydropic fetuses however, survival was markedly improved with intravenous transfusion (86% versus 48%). Intravenous transfusion resulted in the need for fewer neonatal exchange transfusions as compared with intraperitoneal transfusion (mean of 0.8 versus 1.8) as well as a shorter stay in the intensive care nursery (mean of 6.1 versus 8.2 days). It therefore appears that direct intravenous transfusion represents the preferred method of transfusion of the anaemic fetus. The intraperitoneal transfusion, however, remains a practical method for delivering red cells to the nonhydropic fetus when there is difficulty with access to the umbilical cord or intrahepatic umbilical vein. Bowman has proposed a formula for the maximum intraperitoneal transfusion volume (ml) that has withstood the test of time. The volume of red cells to be infused is calculated by subtracting 20 from the gestational age in weeks and multiplying this by a factor of 10. Blood in the peritoneal reservoir can be expected to be absorbed over a 7–10-day period.

Serial haematocrits from fetuses transfused intravenously reveal a marked decline between procedures of approximately 1% per day. In order to avoid this problem, the authors evaluated whether a combined intraperitoneal/intravenous technique would result in a more stable fetal haematocrit between intrauterine transfusions. The technique involved administering enough packed red cells (haematocrit of 75–85%) by intravenous transfusion to achieve a final fetal haematocrit of 35–40%. A standard intraperitoneal transfusion was then undertaken. The hypothesis was that the intraperitoneal infusion would serve as a reservoir, allowing for the slow absorption of red cells between procedures. Four transfusion techniques in 19 fetuses were compared. A combined direct intraperitoneal/intravenous technique achieved a more stable fetal haematocrit compared with direct intravenous transfusion alone, resulting in a decline in haematocrit of 0.01% per day between transfusions compared with a decline of 1.14% per day. Nicolini and coworkers compared 17 intravenous transfusions with 32 combined intraperitoneal/intravenous procedures. A final fetal haematocrit of 40% was targeted for the intravenous portion of the procedure.
volume of blood (ml) used for the intraperitoneal transfusion was calculated from the formula:

$$\text{Hct}_{\text{post IPT}} = \frac{\text{Vol}_{\text{IPT}}, \text{ml} \left( \text{hct}_{\text{post IPT}} - \text{hct}_{\text{initial}} \right) + \text{hct}_{\text{post IPT}}}{\text{Vol}_{\text{IVT}}, \text{ml}}$$

where:

IVT = intravenous transfusion
IPT = intraperitoneal transfusion
Hct = haematocrit.

Assuming complete absorption of the blood infused into the peritoneal cavity, a theoretical final haematocrit of 50–60% was used by these investigators to determine the volume for the intraperitoneal transfusion. Although the decline in haematocrit per day was identical for intravenous transfusion and combined intravenous/intraperitoneal transfusion, the combined procedure achieved a significantly longer interval between transfusions and also maintained a higher initial fetal haematocrit at subsequent transfusion. These data have led several centres to use a combined intravenous/intraperitoneal approach to intrauterine transfusion.

Reports of intrauterine transfusions in twin gestations have been limited to case reports. In one series of nine pregnancies complicated by alloimmunization to D, five of the cases required intrauterine transfusion. Four of the five cases were noted to be dichorionic and diamniotic by first trimester ultrasound using the lambda sign. In one case, only one of the fetal pair was D positive illustrating the need to sample each fetus for antigen testing in such cases. In the authors’ one case of monochorionic gestation, the intrauterine transfusion of one fetus was quickly followed by the movement of donor red cells through intraplacental anastomoses, as illustrated by a Kleihauer–Betke stain (Section 6.3.1) at the time of sampling, in the second twin. In the subsequent intrauterine transfusions, the transfusion of only one member of the twin pair resulted in adequate levels of haemoglobin in both twins. This case illustrates the complexity of intrauterine transfusions in twin gestations. Caution against overtransfusion should be undertaken in the monozygotic gestation. In addition, the use of the intrahepatic portion of the umbilical vein may be the preferred target for vascular access when transfusing a twin gestation and when the corresponding placental cord insertions are difficult to identify.

10.3.4 Amount to transfuse

The endpoint for the completion of an intrauterine transfusion varies considerably. Most centres use a target haematocrit to decide when a transfusion is completed. Advocates of direct intravenous transfusions will usually transfuse to a final value
of 50–65%. This will allow for a reasonable interval between procedures based on a projected decline in haematocrit of 1% per day. However, one should be cautious in transfusing the fetus to nonphysiological values of haematocrit. Welch and coworkers\(^48\) demonstrated that a marked rise in whole blood viscosity is associated with fetal haematocrits above 50%. Centres that use a combined technique will usually use a final target haematocrit of 35–40% for the intravascular portion of the procedure.

Several authors have proposed formulae to calculate the volume of red blood cells to be transfused. The method of Mandelbrot and coworkers\(^49\) requires the calculation of the fetoplacental volume (ml) from the ultrasound estimate of the fetal weight as the initial step \( \left( \frac{1.046}{\text{fetal weight in grams}} \times 0.14 \right) \). The volume (ml) to be transfused is then calculated using the following formula:

\[
V_{\text{transfused}} = \frac{V_{\text{fetoplacental}} \times (\text{hct}_{\text{final}} - \text{hct}_{\text{initial}})}{\text{Hct}_{\text{transfused blood}}}
\]

Giannina and coworkers\(^50\) proposed a simpler method of calculating the volume of packed red cells needed for intrauterine transfusion. Assuming a haematocrit of approximately 75% for the donor unit, they calculated a series of transfusion coefficients for raising the initial fetal haematocrit to a desired final value (Table 10.2). The operator simply multiplies the coefficient by the ultrasound-estimated fetal weight to achieve the final desired fetal haematocrit. Both the equation by Mandelbrot and the technique of Giannina yield similar results when tested prospectively; however, both overestimated the final fetal haematocrit by a value of 8%.

After the first intrauterine transfusion, subsequent procedures are scheduled at 14–21-day intervals until suppression of fetal erythropoiesis is noted on Kleihauer–Betke stains (Section 6.3.1). This usually occurs by the third intrauterine transfusion. Thereafter, the interval for repeat procedures can be determined based on the decline in haematocrit for the individual fetus – usually a 3–4-week interval.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target increase in fetal haematocrit</th>
<th>Transfusion coefficient</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10%</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15%</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20%</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25%</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30%</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.3.5 The severely anaemic fetus

The severely anaemic fetus at 18–24 weeks’ gestation is less able to adapt to acute correction of its anaemia. Monitoring of the umbilical venous pressure during intravenous transfusion has been found useful in such cases. An increase of more than 10 mm Hg predicted fetal death within 24 hours after transfusion with a sensitivity of 80%. Radunovic and coworkers noted a 37% mortality within 72 hours of intravenous transfusion in fetuses presenting with severe anaemia and hydrops. These authors recommended that, in the severely anaemic fetus, the final post-transfusion haematocrit after intravenous transfusion should not exceed a value of 25% or a 4-fold increase from the pretransfusion value. At the authors’ centre, the umbilical venous pressure has been chosen to determine when to conclude an intravenous transfusion in a very anaemic fetus in the early second trimester. Periodic evaluation of the pressure is undertaken and the procedure concluded when the change in pressure approaches 10 mm Hg. A second intravenous transfusion is performed within 48 hours to correct the fetal haematocrit into the normal range; the third procedure is scheduled in 7–10 days. Thereafter, repeat transfusions are undertaken based on fetal haematocrits and Kleihauer–Betke stains. Others choose to evaluate progress of the transfusion by ultrasound assessment of blood flow and fetal heart rate and proceed directly to the full transfusion (even with hydrops) in a single procedure, with the second transfusion at about 2 weeks.

10.3.6 Adjunctive measures

Another important development in the field of fetal transfusion has been the use of fetal paralysis during the procedure. Prior to this modification, fetal movement often resulted in injury to fetal viscera during intraperitoneal transfusion or umbilical cord damage during intravenous transfusion. Fetal paralysis was first introduced by de Crespigny and coworkers in Australia. Initial use in the United States involved the intramuscular injection of (d)-tubocurarine into the fetal thigh under ultrasound guidance. Later, pancuronium bromide was used intravascularly. More recently, short-acting agents such as atracurium besylate and vecuronium bromide have been utilized. These latter agents do not appear to cause the fetal tachycardia and loss of short-term heart rate variability associated with pancuronium. A vecuronium dose of 0.1 mg/kg ultrasound-estimated fetal weight produces immediate cessation of fetal movement after intravascular injection at the start of the intrauterine transfusion. Fetal paralysis can be expected for 1–2 hours. We have observed no untoward effects in neonates treated in this manner. However, the use of fetal paralysis is not indicated when the placenta is anteriorly placed and the needle is not passed through the amniotic fluid.

Prophylactic antibiotics have not been studied in association with intrauterine transfusion, and various centres have developed their own preferences. If they are
to be used, a broad spectrum cephalosporin with coverage that includes gram-positive skin flora would appear to be appropriate.

10.3.7 Outcome

Overall survival after intrauterine transfusion varies with centre, experience and the presence of hydrops fetalis. No randomized or multicentre trials have been undertaken, therefore, to assess whether one type of procedure is superior to another in relation to fetal survival. An overview of the reported literature is presented in Table 10.3. Overall survival was noted to be 84%; up to one-quarter fewer hydropic fetuses survive with intrauterine transfusion (70%) as compared with fetuses who undergo their first intrauterine transfusion when they are not hydropic (survival of 92%).

Immediate follow-up studies of infants treated with intravenous transfusions in utero have revealed a need for ‘top-up’ transfusions in the early months of life. Typically, these infants are born with a virtual absence of reticulocytes, with a red cell population consisting mainly of transfused red cells containing adult haemoglobin. Exchange transfusions for hyperbilirubinaemia are rarely necessary. However, at 1 month of age, these infants often require a simple transfusion due to symptoms associated with anaemia. In one series of 36 infants who had undergone intrauterine transfusions, 50% required top-up transfusions at a mean age of 38 days, with a range of 20–68 days.81 Studies of these infants indicate erythroid hypoplasia of the bone marrow accompanied by low levels of circulating erythropoietin and reticulocytes.82 This led Ovali and coworkers83 to study the use of exogenous erythropoietin in neonates after intrauterine transfusions. Twenty infants were randomized to receive 200 IU/kg of recombinant human erythropoietin or saline placebo subcutaneously three times a week between the second and eighth week of life. Infants in the treatment group required a mean of 1.8 red cell transfusions as compared with a mean of 4.2 transfusions in the placebo group. Absolute reticulocyte counts rose earlier and achieved higher levels in the treatment group as compared with controls.

As a result of this phenomenon, weekly haematocrit and reticulocyte determinations are recommended for the first 1–2 months of life in infants who have undergone intrauterine transfusions.84 Proposed criteria for the transfusion of infants vary in the literature and are usually related to infants born prematurely. A more conservative approach is advocated by Maier and coworkers.85 A threshold for haematocrit used by these authors is 32% if the infant is asymptomatic and 28% with symptoms. Citing the blunting of the normal erythropoietic effect by transfusion, Shannon and coworkers86 proposed a threshold value for haematocrit of 30% or 20% in conjunction with symptoms. If erythropoietin is to be used, initiation in the first week of life in the infant with a persistently low circu-
lating reticulocyte count may prove beneficial. Supplemental iron therapy is unnecessary due to the high levels of circulating iron in these infants secondary to ongoing haemolysis in utero. Supplemental folate therapy (0.5 mg/day) should be considered.

Investigations regarding long-term neurological sequelae in infants who have been treated with intrauterine transfusions are limited. Hardyment and coworkers reported a series of fetuses treated with intraperitoneal transfusion between 1966 and 1975; survival was only 48%. Twenty-one of the 27 infants underwent evaluation and evidence of cerebral palsy was found in two (10%). Advancements in the treatment of HDFN are resulting in the survival of increasing numbers of moribund and severely anaemic fetuses. It is therefore important to review the recent data on the follow-up of infants treated by intravenous transfusion (Table 10.4).

Doyle and coworkers evaluated 38 surviving infants at 2 years of age. The authors noted one case of cerebral palsy, one case of mild disability with a mental developmental index of 72, and one case of severe developmental delay associated with seizures. Comparison with a group of 51 randomly selected infants of normal birth weight who underwent a similar assessment at 2 years of age yielded no significant differences in the incidence of sensorineural outcomes. Mean developmental index was found to be higher in the transfused group. Janssens and coworkers studied 69 infants between 6 months and 6 years of age. Seven per cent of the children exhibited some evidence of neurological handicap; three infants (4%) were diagnosed with cerebral palsy. Sixteen per cent of the children were noted to have developmental delay; six cases showed mild delay while five additional cases exhibited severe delay. The overall rate of 10% disability in their group was found to be comparable to a cohort of normal Dutch children (6% disabled) and a cohort of high-risk children (12% disabled). We followed 40 surviving infants for up to 62 months of age. One case of spastic hemiplegia was detected. Gesell and McCarthy developmental scores were similar to norms for the general population. Grab and coworkers followed 30 infants and noted mild sensorineural disabilities in two. One infant exhibited delayed speech development at 24 months; the second had mild psychomotor developmental delay at 1 year of age that had resolved by 6 years of life.

Hearing loss in the neonate has been reported in association with high bilirubin levels. Since red cell destruction can lead to higher than normal levels of bilirubin in utero, as well as elevated levels in neonatal life, it would appear that HDFN could be associated with sensorineural hearing loss. Janssens and coworkers found a 14% rate in 58 children screened at 9 months. However, five of the cases were thought to be conductive in nature due to the association with middle ear or respiratory infection and the transient nature of the findings. Hudon and coworkers followed 30 infants and noted mild sensorineural disabilities in two. One infant exhibited delayed speech development at 24 months; the second had mild psychomotor developmental delay at 1 year of age that had resolved by 6 years of life.

Antenatal therapy for haemolytic disease
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Number of patients</th>
<th>Number of survivors (total)</th>
<th>Number of survivors (hydrops)</th>
<th>Number of survivors (no hydrops)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lepercq et al., 1999</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>NM</td>
<td>NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grab et al., 1999</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>7/11</td>
<td>28/32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Babinszki et al., 1998</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>NM</td>
<td>NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janssens et al., 1997</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>24/37</td>
<td>49/55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inglis et al., 1996</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>3/3</td>
<td>16/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merchant et al., 1994</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>5/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plockinger et al., 1994</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>5/7</td>
<td>13/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampson et al., 1994</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>20/33</td>
<td>39/45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selbing et al., 1993</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>NM</td>
<td>NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newnham et al., 1992</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>4/6</td>
<td>12/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weiner et al., 1991</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>11/13</td>
<td>35/35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harman et al., 1990</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>18/21</td>
<td>22/23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemery et al., 1989</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2/4</td>
<td>8/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicolini et al., 1989</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>IVT/IPT</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>NM</td>
<td>NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattison &amp; Roberts, 1989</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>IVT, IVT/IPT</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>17/18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poissonnier et al., 1989</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>IVT/IPT</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>29/47</td>
<td>55/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ronkin et al., 1989</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>6/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barss et al., 1988</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>IVT/IPT</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>5/6</td>
<td>7/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grannum et al., 1988</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>16/20</td>
<td>5/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orsini et al., 1988</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4/8</td>
<td>6/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berkowitz et al., 1988</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>7/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parer, 1988</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>NM</td>
<td>NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Socol et al., 1987</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3/3</td>
<td>0/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berkowitz et al., 1986</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2/4</td>
<td>4/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doyle et al., 1986</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>5/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicolaides et al., 1986</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>9/10</td>
<td>8/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de Crespigny et al., 1985</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bang et al., 1982</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>IVT</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Survival</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>83%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>92%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
IVT is intravascular transfusion (direct or exchange); IVT/IPT is combined intravascular (direct or exchange) with intraperitoneal transfusion; NM indicates not mentioned in the article.
Table 10.4 Long-term studies of infants after intrauterine transfusion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Number of patients</th>
<th>Number of infants with cerebral palsy</th>
<th>Number of infants with hearing loss</th>
<th>Number of infants with severe developmental delay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Doyle et al., 1993</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janssens et al., 1997</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hudon et al., 1998</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grab et al., 1999</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Totals</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>177</strong></td>
<td><strong>5 (2.8%)</strong></td>
<td><strong>4 (2.3%)</strong></td>
<td><strong>7 (3.9%)</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
* Includes the infant with cerebral palsy in this series.
# Includes three infants with cerebral palsy from this series.
Normal outcome = 93%. 
tested 21 infants just prior to discharge. Two infants had mild peripheral sensitiv-
ity loss with recovery noted in one at 5 months of age; the other child was lost to
follow-up. A third child exhibited severe bilateral deafness. These authors proposed
that hearing loss appeared to be 5–10-fold increased over the general population in
infants requiring in utero therapy for HDFN.

The issue of enhanced survival of the sick fetus and the relationship to long-term
outcome has been addressed in two investigations. Using a two sample analysis,
Janssens and coworkers\textsuperscript{61} failed to find a correlation between either the presence of
hydrops or the number of intrauterine transfusions and poor neonatal neurologi-
cal outcome. Using a multivariate analysis, our group could find no relationship
between global developmental scores and the number of intrauterine transfusions,
lowest fetal haematocrit or presence of hydrops. These data are reassuring in coun-
selling the couple that presents with the severely anaemic fetus. They can be reas-
sured that a normal neurological outcome can be expected in over 90% of surviving
infants even if hydrops fetalis is noted at the time of the first intrauterine transfu-
sion.

10.4 Red cells for transfusion

Red cells used for intrauterine transfusion must undergo the same rigorous testing
that occurs for any allogenic donation. In the USA, this includes a confidential
written questionnaire that enquires about illicit substance abuse and high-risk
sexual behaviour. Serum testing for antibodies to syphilis, hepatitis B core antigen,
human immunodeficiency viruses (HIV I and II), hepatitis C virus (HCV), human
lymphotropic viruses (HTLV I and II), as well as testing for the p24 antigen of the
hepatitis C virus, hepatitis B surface antigen (HbsAg) and alanine aspartate trans-
ferase, is undertaken. Additional testing by nucleic acid amplification for HIV and
HCV is currently being performed as part of a study which includes the vast major-
ity of donations collected in the USA. In the UK, all donors are screened for HbsAg
as well as antibodies against HIV, HCV and syphilis. Red cells to be used for intra-
uterine transfusion are often leukocyte reduced or are from donors who are sero-
negative for cytomegalovirus (CMV) to decrease the risk of transmitting the virus.
A relatively fresh unit of blood is preferred to stored blood. Standards in the UK
require that red cells used for intrauterine transfusion have been stored for less than
5 days. A recent review noted that six cases of graft-versus-host reaction have been
reported in infants who underwent intrauterine transfusion.\textsuperscript{92} Bohm and cowork-
ers\textsuperscript{93} proposed that this was due to the induction of immune tolerance to engraft-
ing lymphocytes that gain entry to the fetal circulation through large volume
intrauterine transfusions. The British Blood Transfusion Task Force\textsuperscript{94} and the
American Association of Blood Banks Standards\textsuperscript{95} require that red cell units for
intrauterine transfusion undergo gamma irradiation to prevent graft-versus-host reaction. In addition, leukodepletion is a requirement in the UK and, although not routinely practised in the USA, is often used to reduce the risk of transmitting CMV and will likely be universally accepted in the near future.

Maternal blood donation is an excellent source of red cells for intrauterine transfusion and the procedure is well tolerated. In a series of 21 patients, up to 6 units of blood per patient were harvested for intrauterine transfusion.\textsuperscript{96} Supplementation with prenatal vitamins, folate and ferrous sulphate prevented maternal anaemia in all cases. No serious maternal or fetal effects were noted. Theoretical advantages to the use of maternal blood include a decreased risk for sensitization to new red cell antigens, longer half-life due to the fresh source of cells and decreased risk for transmission of viral agents. Vietor and coworkers\textsuperscript{97} investigated the source of new red cell antibodies in 91 patients undergoing 280 intrauterine transfusions. Twenty-six per cent of the women developed new antibodies. In 14 cases, the source of the sensitizing antigen could be determined; in one-fifth of the cases, donor red cells carried the involved antigen. It would therefore appear that, in 5\% of cases, the use of maternal blood as the source of red cells for intrauterine transfusion would prevent the development of new anti-red cell antibodies. Only one investigation has compared the effect of maternal and donor red cells on the fetus.\textsuperscript{98} Seventy-six intrauterine transfusions in which maternal blood was used were compared with 213 intrauterine transfusions in which donor red cells were employed. The rate of haematocrit decline was significantly lower in the group receiving maternal red cells, although this difference did not manifest until after 33 weeks’ gestation. In addition, infants who received maternal blood required fewer neonatal transfusions (mean of 0.38 versus 1.48) as compared with those who received donor cells. The authors conjectured that this finding could be related to increased maternal reticulocytosis after repeated donations. Such reticulocytosis would result in a younger population of red cells that would exhibit a longer half-life in the fetus. They concluded that maternal red cells were preferred over donor red cells because they offered the potential advantage of decreasing the total number of intrauterine transfusions necessary for the treatment of a particular fetus. To date, no study has compared the risk of fetal viral infection in maternal versus donor red cells.

In a maternal blood donation programme, the patient can, if intrauterine transfusions are likely, donate a unit of red cells after the first trimester. The unit can be separated into two smaller aliquots and refrigerated for up to 32 days. If not used by this date, the unit can then be frozen for use for a period of up to 10 years. Patients should be supplemented with additional iron therapy (324 mg ferrous sulphate twice daily) as well as additional folate (1 mg daily). Additional considerations related to pregnancy include positioning the patient in the left lateral...
recumbent position during the donation and replacing the donated volume with isotonic intravenous fluids. Fetal monitoring during the procedure is unnecessary. A standard volume of 450 ± 45 ml is taken as subsequent washing and packing will markedly reduce the final volume available for transfusion. Maternal blood requires some additional processing before use for intrauterine transfusion. The blood is washed several times to remove the offending antibody. Since the mother and fetus will share HLA antigens at many loci, the possibility of a graft-versus-host reaction is higher than with the use of a nonrelated donor unit. In order to avoid this complication, the authors routinely leukoreduce the unit using specialized filters in addition to the standard irradiation with 25 Gy of gamma radiation to the central portion of the donor bag. The use of maternal blood in the CMV-seropositive patient is controversial. Dormant CMV is noted to reside in the polymorphonuclear leukocytes. Both leukoreduction and washing have been demonstrated to be effective mechanisms in the prevention of the transmission of CMV. For this reason, the authors proceed with the use of maternal CMV-seropositive blood after careful counselling of the patient. Finally, the use of ABO-incompatible maternal red cells for intrauterine transfusion has raised concern. With fetal typing now available at the first fetal blood sampling, situations may arise in which the patient is found to be type A or B and the fetus is typed as O. We have used maternal blood in two such cases with no deleterious effects noted in the fetus. Follow-up at 3 years of age in one of these infants revealed anti-A and anti-B titres that were appropriate for age.

10.5 Experimental therapy

Although intrauterine transfusion remains the mainstay of treatment for cases of HDFN, various methods have been attempted in order to address the offending antibodies directly. Such techniques have included immunoabsorption, oral tolerance, chemotherapeutic antibody suppression and paternal leukocyte sensitization.

10.5.1 Immunoabsorption

Yoshida and coworkers reported a single case of immunoabsorption in a patient with anti-P antibodies and four recurrent losses. Maternal plasma obtained by a flow cell separator was mixed with P-positive donor red cells in an effort to bind the anti-red cell antibodies. The mixture was centrifuged and the plasma returned to the patient. A series of procedures was performed on 215 l of maternal plasma between the sixth and 14th week of the pregnancy. The patient subsequently delivered a viable infant. Robinson attempted a similar procedure in a patient with anti-D in which 2 l of the patient’s plasma was absorbed with D-positive red cells.
and reinfused at 20, 21 and 22 weeks’ gestation. Unfortunately, at 23 weeks, the patient’s anti-D titre showed a marked increase associated with a fetal demise 2 weeks later. The author conjectured that red cell fragments contaminating the absorption process may have contributed to the rise in antibody. Soluble D antigen has recently been described that can be fixed to polystyrene beads.\(^{103}\) This raises the possibility of the future development of an immunoabsorbent column that could be placed in a plasmapheresis circuit for the removal of anti-D.

### 10.5.2 Oral tolerance

Studies to date attempting oral desensitization to red cell antigens have revealed conflicting results. In 1979, Bierme and associates\(^{104}\) investigated the use of oral D antigen in seven severely alloimunized women. All previous pregnancies had resulted in intrauterine death even though intrauterine transfusions were used in four cases. Anti-D titres were noted to remain stable in all cases. In six of the seven treated cases, a D-positive infant was born at 35 weeks’ gestation in good condition. In an attempt to duplicate these results, American investigators treated four patients with a history of severe HDFN with oral erythrocytes using the method of Bierme.\(^{105}\) All four cases resulted in either fetal or neonatal death; hydrops fetalis was noted in all cases. In a rebuttal letter to the editor, Bierme’s group\(^{106}\) reported a larger series of 16 pregnancies with 12 live births using oral erythrocyte therapy in conjunction with oral promethazine. The authors proposed that a therapeutic trial should be undertaken. Three years later, Barnes and coworkers\(^{107}\) reported a study into the effects of oral erythrocyte membrane therapy in nonpregnant patients. Six previously sensitized women were administered a 2 g/day dose of a lyophilized preparation of erythrocyte membranes for 4 weeks. One-half of the patients received an erythrocyte preparation prepared from D-negative red cells and one-half received D-positive red cell preparations. In three subjects, there was no change in antibody levels, while, in the remaining three, there was a clear elevation in antibody titres. In this latter group, two of the three had received D-positive oral antigen. These findings led the authors to conclude that their oral preparation was not tolerogenic but, in fact, immunogenic. No further reports can be found in peer-reviewed literature regarding this therapy; it appears to have been abandoned as a potential treatment with the advent of more effective methods of intrauterine transfusion.

### 10.5.3 Chemotherapeutic agents

In vitro, promethazine interferes with the ability of human fetal macrophages to phagocytose red cells sensitized with anti-D.\(^{108}\) This has led several investigators to use this agent in an effort to ameliorate the effects of maternal anti-red cell antibodies in HDFN. Gusdon\(^{109}\) treated 72 patients with alloimmunization to D with doses of 3.7–5.0 mg/kg/day divided in four doses beginning as early as 14 weeks’ gestation.
The lowest dose was used in patients with a first affected pregnancy while the highest dose was used in patients with a history of previous intrauterine transfusion or fetal death. When compared with previous pregnancy, there was a marked improvement in outcome. Three perinatal deaths occurred in the pregnancies treated with promethazine as compared with eight deaths in previous pregnancies \( (p < 0.05) \). The infants from 28% of the treated pregnancies required neonatal exchange transfusion as compared with 44% of infants from previous pregnancies \( (p < 0.05) \). A similar investigation in 21 pregnancies was undertaken by a second group, where general impression was that promethazine was not beneficial in view of the continued need for intrauterine transfusions. However, a therapeutic effect was possibly seen in some pregnancies with previous neonatal demise.

Steroids have been attempted in the treatment of HDFN, but no case series have been published. Agents such as betamethasone and dexamethasone that cross the placenta have been associated with decreases in the absorbance density \( (\Delta \text{OD}_{450}) \) of amniotic fluid. However, these changes have not been associated with a decrease in the severity of HDFN, but, instead, are probably related to alterations in fetal bilirubin metabolism.

### 10.5.4 Sensitization to paternal leukocyte antigens

In vitro data and clinical case reports suggest that maternal alloantibodies to paternal leukocytes may result in a blocking phenomenon which protects sensitized fetal red cells from haemolysis in utero (Section 1.3.2.8). Neppert and coworkers reported that human sera with HLA-A, -B, -C and -DR antibodies inhibited the binding and phagocytosis of IgG-sensitized red cells by monocytes. The authors proposed that anti-HLA antibodies might inhibit the fetal reticuloendothelial system. This would explain the lack of clinical disease in some rare cases with a strongly positive direct antiglobulin test (Section 3.6) at birth. In 1992, Dooren and coworkers studied 12 pregnant women with anti-D in whom the in vitro antibody-dependent monocyte-mediated cytotoxicity assay (Section 8.4.2) predicted severe fetal disease, but the neonatal clinical course was benign. When donor monocytes were replaced in the assay by paternal cells (monocytes that should share HLA antigens with the neonate), seven of the repeat assays revealed a lack of lysis of the sensitized red cells. Six of the seven cases involved maternal monocyte-reactive antibodies of the paternal HLA-DR specificity. Three reports of clinical cases have appeared in the literature in which maternal HLA-antibodies were thought to be the explanation for unexpectedly mild outcomes. In two cases, the specificity of the maternal antibody was HLA-DR while, in the remaining case, the antibody was directed against the HLA-A10 and DR13 antigens. New data suggest that these alloantibodies prevent the binding of anti-D-sensitized fetal red cells to FcγR-bearing splenic phagocytes, thus reducing the severity of HDFN.
The authors have shown in a rabbit model for HDFN that alloimmunization to paternal leukocytes produces fetal haemoglobin levels in an affected litter that approach normal. The potential limitations of using paternal leukocytes to elicit these blocking antibodies for the treatment for severe red cell alloimmunization are substantial. Any contaminating red cells could substantially boost maternal antibody levels. In addition, maternal sensitization to paternal HLA antigens could produce alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

10.6 Timing of delivery

When intraperitoneal transfusions were used as the sole means of in utero therapy, fetuses were routinely delivered at 32 weeks’ gestation. Hyaline membrane disease and the need for neonatal exchange transfusions for the treatment of hyperbilirubinaemia were common. As experience with intravascular transfusions became widespread, pregnancies were delivered at later gestational ages. Most authorities will now perform the final intrauterine transfusion at up to 35 weeks’ gestation, with delivery anticipated at 37–38 weeks. Such practice allows maturation of both the pulmonary and hepatic enzyme systems, virtually eliminating the need for neonatal exchange transfusions. After a viable gestational age is attained, performing the transfusion in immediate proximity to the labour and delivery suite appears prudent, so that operative delivery can be undertaken if fetal distress should occur.

10.7 Conclusion

Intrauterine transfusion remains the most effective treatment in the management of most cases of HDFN. In cases of previous perinatal loss in the early second trimester, intravenous immune globulin alone or in combination with plasmapheresis may represent a means for achieving a successful outcome in these pregnancies. Clearly, a multicentre trial should be undertaken to address this group of patients who continue to experience a high rate of perinatal loss. Possible future advances in therapy include selective immunotherapy to block or suppress maternal anti-red cell antibodies. If successful, such therapies could retire intrauterine transfusion into the annals of historical medicine.

10.8 References

Antenatal therapy for haemolytic disease

54 Moise KJ Jr, Carpenter RJ Jr, Deter RL, Kirshon B & Diaz SF (1987). The use of fetal neuro-


197 Antenatal therapy for haemolytic disease


**Antenatal therapy for haemolytic disease**

---


**Antenatal therapy for haemolytic disease**


Neonatal therapy for haemolytic disease of the newborn

Glynn Russell and Nic Goulden
The Children’s Hospital, Bristol, UK

Improvements in preventative and therapeutic fetal medicine, such as the better timing of delivery guided by Liley’s charts, fetal blood transfusion and the widespread use of anti-D immunoglobulin, have had dramatic effects on morbidity and mortality due to HDFN. Advances in neonatal intensive care have further contributed to this reduction. This chapter reviews therapies which may be used to treat hydrops, anaemia and jaundice in affected neonates.

11.1 Features of haemolytic disease in the neonate

There are three main clinically significant conditions seen during the first 28 days after birth caused by maternal blood group alloantibodies transferred to the fetus. These are hydrops, jaundice and anaemia.

11.1.1 Hydrops

The most severely affected fetuses present with hydrops manifesting as generalized tissue oedema, pleural effusions and ascites. Although the pathogenesis of these features is not clear, presumably neonates born with hydrops suffer the end result of fetal heart failure due to both hypoxic myocardial dysfunction and increased intravascular fluid retention (Section 9.3.1). Fetal liver dysfunction may also contribute to the oedema because the extensive erythropoiesis causes disruption to the portal circulation and impaired albumin synthesis. Antenatal treatment is aimed at the correction of the anaemia by fetal blood transfusion (Section 10.3), but, when a neonate is born with hydrops, early neonatal death may result from the inability to resuscitate the severely hydropic and anaemic baby at delivery. Later postnatal death may result from other consequences of hydrops, such as pulmonary hypoplasia, the complications of prematurity or even complications of treatment such as exchange transfusion. However, better neonatal intensive care has improved the survival of hydropic neonates. Although, of course, the prognosis is closely related to gestational age at delivery, the overall survival of alloimmune hydrops is between 65% and 85%.1,2
11.1.2 Neonatal jaundice

Early neonatal jaundice (usually detected within 24 hours of birth) may be accompanied by haemolytic anaemia, thrombocytopenia and, sometimes, neutropenia. Treatment by phototherapy and exchange transfusion is aimed primarily at avoiding the accumulation of toxic levels of bilirubin. The placenta before delivery clears bilirubin, but a rapid rise of serum bilirubin after birth may cause the deposition of lipid-soluble unconjugated bilirubin in the basal nuclei of brain. Bilirubin toxicity classically manifests in the short term as kernicterus with an acute encephalopathy and, in the long term, as athetoid cerebral palsy and/or sensorineural deafness.

11.1.3 Persistent anaemia

Anaemia may persist beyond the early neonatal period as a consequence of haemolysis secondary to antibodies that continue to circulate. Exchange transfusion reduces the concentration of circulating antibodies only slightly because much of the antibody is distributed in the extravascular space. If repeated neonatal (and/or fetal) blood transfusions have been performed, erythropoietin may be suppressed by the relatively normal or high haemoglobin concentrations. Erythropoietin levels may take weeks or months to recover and this contributes to the consequent anaemia. Suppression of erythropoiesis secondary to the effects of anti-Kell antibodies may also cause persistent anaemia (Section 2.5.3).

11.2 Laboratory diagnosis

The diagnosis of alloimmune haemolysis in the neonate usually relies on paired parental and neonatal ABO, Rh and K typing, but, on occasion, typing for less common antigens will be appropriate. A direct antiglobulin test on the neonatal blood (Section 3.6) will normally reveal the presence of red cell-bound IgG, although this may not be the case after intrauterine transfusion or in neonatally transfused cases if antigen-positive red cells are cleared due to rapid haemolysis. The antibody responsible for haemolysis should be identified by testing maternal serum, but, if this is unavailable, an eluate from neonatal red cells or neonatal serum may be used. In most cases, it is possible to identify the antibody rapidly by testing against a panel of reagent cells (Section 3.4). In some cases, more than one antibody may be present and, in this situation, an examination of an eluate from neonatal red cells may reveal which antibody specificity is involved in the haemolytic process (Section 3.6). Occasionally, the presence of antibodies against high-frequency antigens may lead to a positive reaction against all panel cells tested and then an extended panel of rare red cells lacking these antigens may be required to elucidate the specificity. Sometimes, the maternal antibody screen may be negative.
in the presence of a positive direct antiglobulin test on the neonatal blood. This usually reflects the presence of antibodies to a low-frequency antigen inherited from the father.

11.3 General neonatal management

11.3.1 Communication

Good communication between fetal medicine, obstetric, neonatal and blood transfusion staff is essential to ensure effective neonatal treatment, but this is not always easy to achieve. Many of the complications of the disease and its fetal treatment are unpredictable. For example, a complication during a fetal transfusion may necessitate an immediate delivery. This can result in a premature, anaemic and acutely unwell baby being delivered at less than 10 minutes’ notice. Another challenge may follow successful fetal transfusion therapy when the woman is likely to be delivered at 36–38 weeks in her local hospital. Should difficulties then arise, a different team of neonatologists may be involved. It is therefore important to keep informed all the people who could possibly be relevant to any given case. This may require a large number of communications, the majority of which may subsequently prove to have been unnecessary.

Despite the problems described above, when delivery is planned in advance, there are steps which can and should be achieved in a coordinated manner. There should be a careful consideration of antenatal corticosteroid treatment. Also, blood should be made available to the neonatologist by crossmatching against the mother’s blood before the delivery. It is a good idea for the woman to be given the chance to meet the neonatologists and to visit the neonatal intensive care unit before delivery whenever possible. This can provide useful reassurance to the patient before birth, but it also makes communication easier after birth should neonatal complications arise.

11.3.2 Resuscitation

The need for full cardiopulmonary resuscitation should be anticipated, especially if hydrops is present. A secure airway and effective respiration with supplemental oxygen should be established. If severe hydrops is present, endotracheal intubation and ventilation will be needed and sometimes each may be achieved only with considerable difficulty. Facial and airway oedema may make endotracheal intubation difficult. Drainage of tense ascites and pleural fluid is also necessary in some cases to allow adequate ventilation. Pulmonary compliance may be poor because of tissue oedema and also because of surfactant deficiency if the baby is preterm or has hydrops. Chest wall oedema may restrict effective spontaneous respiration and necessitate high peak inflation pressures if mechanical ventilation is needed. The
chest wall oedema limits chest auscultation and makes cardiac compression more
difficult to achieve.

Vascular access should be gained via the umbilical vein and blood samples taken
for acid base balance, albumin concentration, glucose concentration, haematocrit,
full blood count, direct antiglobulin test, blood crossmatch (if not already done)
and bilirubin concentration. As described earlier, if haemolytic disease is anticipated
before delivery, blood crossmatched against the mother should be available for
transfusion. In any event, fresh group O, D-negative, cytomegalovirus (CMV)-
negative blood (1 adult unit) should be available for emergency use (Section 11.5.1).

11.4 Treatment of hydrops

Hydrops is usually associated with significant anaemia and poor cardiopulmonary
function and so admission to a neonatal intensive care unit for respiratory and
inotropic cardiac support with continuous monitoring is needed. Continuous
blood pressure monitoring is mandatory and, if possible, central venous pressure
monitoring through an umbilical venous catheter placed in the right atrium should
assist in managing circulating blood volume and cardiac function. The circulating
blood volume is usually normal and, in most cases, the central venous pressure is
not elevated. Inappropriate infusion of blood and fluids may, however, cause a
rapid deterioration in cardiac function. Hypoalbuminaemia is common, but there
is no evidence that albumin infusions are helpful. Meticulous fluid, electrolyte and
 glucose management is obligatory. For example, crystalloid infusion rates should
be restricted to 60ml/kg/day and glucose infusion concentration increased to
prevent hypoglycaemia.

11.5 Treatment of anaemia

11.5.1 Blood transfusion

Correction of anaemia is important and achieved by repeated small blood transfu-
sions or a small-volume (30–50ml/kg body weight) exchange blood transfusion in
severe hydrops to increase the haemoglobin concentration. Neonates are at partic-
ular risk of a number of metabolic, infectious and immunological side-effects fol-
lowing blood transfusion. Each of these is considered in relation to the
consequences of transfusion in a neonate suffering from HDFN.

11.5.1.1 Selection of compatible blood

Maternal serological investigation allows the selection of antigen-negative red cells
for transfusion. In most cases the antigen involved will be either D, c, K, Fy(a), A
or B (Sections 2.5 and 2.6). For this reason, Blood Centres in the UK routinely hold stocks of group O, D-negative, c-negative, K-negative blood. In cases where less commonly encountered antibodies are implicated, the advice of an expert transfusion physician should be sought. It is important to note that, even when a clearly defined antigen specificity has been documented and appropriate antigen-negative cells selected, cross matching is still mandatory. Ideally, the initial crossmatch should be against maternal plasma. In the absence of maternal plasma, an eluate from neonatal red cells and neonatal serum can be used.

11.5.1.2 Red cell concentrates

In recent years, the demand for plasma-derived products has been so great that transfusion services have moved away from the storage of whole blood. Packed red cell concentrates resuspended in optimal additive solutions are now the norm and commonly have a haematocrit of 50–70%. Whereas the infusion of small volumes (10 ml/kg) of this product as a top-up is unlikely to adversely affect the recipient, a conventional double volume exchange transfusion involves the infusion of 180 ml/kg of stored blood over a 60–90-minute period. In order to maintain whole blood viscosity, the haematocrit of the infused product should be 55–60%. In the UK, plasma-reduced whole blood (haematocrit 55–60%) is normally supplied for exchange transfusion. An alternative approach involves the ‘reconstitution’ of whole blood by mixing red cell concentrate and fresh frozen plasma.

11.5.1.3 Anticoagulant

Heparinized fresh whole blood has been widely used in the past but may increase the risk of bleeding and is no longer recommended. Blood is collected into citrate–phosphate–dextrose anticoagulant and, in theory, infusion of citrate could lead to rebound hypoglycaemia, hypocalcaemia and acidosis. In practice, this appears not to be an issue after top-up transfusion in an otherwise well baby. Prophylactic administration of calcium gluconate during exchange transfusion with blood containing citrate remains controversial. Nevertheless, many units continue to administer prophylactic calcium. This may be particularly relevant in babies who have other medical conditions complicating their haemolytic process.

The shelf life of packed red cells can be extended when they are suspended in additive solutions. Commonly used additive solutions include SAG-M and AS-1, both of which contain glucose and mannitol. Infusions of these additives may lead to rebound hypoglycaemia and fluid balance problems, but, once again, this is unlikely after small-volume top-up transfusion. Nevertheless, exchange transfusion with these products is not recommended.
11.5.1.4 Storage

Blood stored at 4°C under optimal conditions has a shelf life of 35 days. During storage, potassium leaches from the red cells into the suspension medium and, after 35 days in AS-1, the potassium concentration reaches approximately 50 mmol/l. Storage also leads to complete depletion of 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG) by 21 days. In spite of these changes, a top-up transfusion of 10 ml/kg of red cells up to 35 days old does not carry a significant risk to the neonate. The advantage of such products is that they can be subdivided into small aliquots (so-called paedipacks) and used for multiple top-up transfusions over a 5-week period, thus limiting exposure of the patient to a single donor. By contrast, blood for large-volume transfusion should be less than 5 days old, in order to minimize the effects of potassium loss and 2,3-DPG depletion.

11.5.1.5 Leukodepletion and irradiation

CMV can be transmitted by blood derived from healthy but latently infected adult donors. Transfusion-acquired CMV disease may be life-threatening, particularly in immunocompromised recipients, but transmission can be prevented by reducing the transfused white cell dose to less than $1 \times 10^6$ by leukodepletion with a cell filter. Filtration at the bedside is not recommended, as this may be unreliable and leukodepletion at the transfusion centre with attendant quality control is preferred. In the UK, all red cells and platelets are now leukodepleted. Prospective studies have suggested that CMV disease is most likely in very low birthweight children born to CMV-seronegative mothers. Current guidelines therefore recommend that all babies receive CMV-negative leukodepleted blood products.

Despite leukodepletion, all red cell and platelet products contain viable mononuclear cells. Following transfusion, these are killed by the immune system of the recipient and cause no clinical problem in an immunocompetent patient. However, if very large volumes of fresh allogeneic mononuclear cells are infused, as in an intrauterine or exchange transfusion, then the stem cells contained within this population may engraft in the recipient. Rarely, this may lead to lethal transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease, which is more likely in immunodeficient recipients and in rare cases where blood is transfused from first-degree relatives who may share an HLA type with the recipient – which is an increased risk in units in which maternal blood is used for fetal transfusion. Irradiation of blood (giving 2500 cGy as the minimum dose to any part of the pack, with no part receiving more than 5000 cGy) prevents proliferation of transfused mononuclear cells and can be considered to be universally effective. In the neonatal treatment of HDFN, irradiated blood products are recommended in the following situations:

1. Transfusion after fetal transfusion. It is generally accepted that transfusion in utero is immunosuppressive, predisposing the neonate to an increased risk of
graft-versus-host disease. The use of irradiated cellular blood products for neonatal transfusion is mandatory in these cases.13

(2) Exchange transfusion. Without fetal transfusion, graft-versus-host disease is uncommon, but exchange transfusions involving large volumes of cells may increase the risk and so irradiation is recommended, provided this does not delay transfusion.13

11.5.2 Influence of fetal transfusions

Janssens and coworkers reported their experience of 92 fetuses treated between 1987 and 1993.2 There was a significant negative correlation between the number of fetal transfusions received and the number of postnatal exchange transfusions required (91% of neonates received one or more exchange transfusions). Weiner and coworkers reported a similar observation, although only 20% of neonates required exchange transfusion in their study.1 Thus, transfusion in utero appears to reduce significantly the requirement for transfusion postnatally.

Babies who are born at an adequate gestation for lung maturity, with an adequate haemoglobin and with the majority of fetal blood having been replaced by donor blood (such that the percentage of fetal blood cells is about 1%) normally require little specific management in the experience of the authors. Jaundice is usually mild and phototherapy alone is usually sufficient, although a top-up blood transfusion may be required to achieve a haemoglobin concentration of about 12–14g/dl.

Babies who are born without complete suppression of fetal haemopoiesis will be at greater risk of both neonatal anaemia and hyperbilirubinaemia. This group needs to be closely monitored and some of these babies require exchange transfusion, phototherapy and top-up transfusions. Babies who have received no fetal transfusion need to be managed according to the traditional indications for exchange transfusion (Section 11.6.2.1). In addition, hydrops is more likely and needs to be managed accordingly.

11.5.3 Indications for transfusion

The degree of anaemia at which neonatal blood transfusion is indicated is unclear. It has been suggested that late transfusion is rarely needed for haemoglobin concentrations as low as 5–6g/dl unless the patient is symptomatic (breathless, lethargic, feeding poorly or not thriving).16 The clinical condition of the patient should be the primary determinant of the need for transfusion. Supplemental iron therapy should not be prescribed routinely unless the serum ferritin has fallen to low levels; repeated transfusions and ongoing haemolysis ensure that total body iron stores are usually significantly increased. Folate, at a dose of 100μg/day, is recommended by some.17

Anaemia may last for 3 months or more following birth because of the persistence of antibodies and suppression of erythropoiesis. Babies who have had
repeated transfusions with adult blood seem to tolerate low haemoglobin concentrations – perhaps because of the more efficient oxygen delivery of haemoglobin A compared with haemoglobin F. A conservative blood transfusion policy allows the haemoglobin concentration to fall without further blood transfusions to avoid further donor exposure and to allow the natural stimulus for endogenous erythropoietin to occur.

The role of recombinant erythropoietin is not known. In the absence of fetal transfusions, endogenous erythropoietin is normal despite the reticulocytopenia. However, in a small randomized trial of 20 babies with HDFN due to anti-D, erythropoietin treatment (200IU/kg, three times a week for 6 weeks) significantly reduced the need for top-up blood transfusions for persistent anaemia (1.8 transfusions versus 4.2 transfusions in the control group).

11.6 Treatment of neonatal jaundice

The rise in serum bilirubin that occurs when the placenta is removed and the haemolytic process continues is the main clinical problem that requires treatment in the absence of hydrops. The two established treatments available are phototherapy and exchange blood transfusion.

11.6.1 Phototherapy

Phototherapy is normally the first intervention in hyperbilirubinaemia, with exchange transfusion only being used if there is failure to control the bilirubin. The method uses light in the range of 425–475 nm wavelength and is effective in reducing serum bilirubin concentration by converting it into isomer forms or photoxidation products which are excreted in bile and urine. Phototherapy has been shown to reduce the requirement for exchange transfusion, but studies have not had the power to show an effect on neurodevelopmental outcome. In haemolytic anaemia, phototherapy is typically used in conjunction with exchange transfusion to maintain the serum bilirubin concentration at safe levels. Low gestational age, hypoxia and acidosis are considered to be factors which reduce the level of bilirubin which may be considered safe for particular babies (see guidelines below).

11.6.2 Exchange blood transfusion

11.6.2.1 Indications for exchange blood transfusion

This procedure is indicated for the rapid correction of severe anaemia in seriously affected neonates (Section 11.5) and in the treatment of hyperbilirubinaemia or rapidly rising bilirubin concentrations, especially if phototherapy has failed. All the issues of blood transfusion in neonates discussed above (Section 11.5.1) also apply
if this technique is being used to treat jaundice. In babies who have not had blood transfusions as fetuses, one or more exchange transfusions may be needed to correct the anaemia and to control the rise in bilirubin – or to reduce the level of bilirubin if it has already reached levels thought to be risking neurotoxicity. Exchange transfusion is also useful for correcting severe anaemia even in the absence of hyperbilirubinaemia, and may help to limit further serious rises in bilirubin by removing sensitized red cells from the circulation. Since the number of exchange transfusions performed has dramatically reduced in recent years, the experience, and so perhaps skill, of neonatal practitioners in this procedure has probably fallen, with the potential for increasing the risks of the procedure.

Exchange transfusion has been shown to reduce the incidence of kernicterus. The only randomized controlled trial of exchange transfusion (‘double volume’ or twice the average circulating blood volume of 80ml/kg) was conducted in 1952. There were fewer deaths and fewer cases of kernicterus in the group who received exchange transfusions compared with the group who received simple blood transfusions for anaemia. The incidence of kernicterus has fallen dramatically in the years that have followed.

Indications for exchange transfusion are controversial and wide variation in practice exists. Such variation in practice also seems to exist in the care of babies who have received multiple intrauterine transfusions, with reported incidences of postnatal exchange transfusions ranging from 20% to 91%.

Traditionally, exchange transfusions have been considered to be indicated either within 12 hours of birth for anaemia and high bilirubin concentrations, or later, to control the rise in postnatal bilirubin despite phototherapy. Delayed exchange transfusions are performed when bilirubin concentrations have reached presumed toxic levels (Table 11.1) or when the rate of rise predicts that a toxic range will be reached. A rate of rise (despite phototherapy) of 0.5 mg/dl/hour or 10 μmol/l/hour is now commonly regarded as an indication for exchange transfusion. Such a rise may predict more accurately the need for exchange transfusion than cord blood haemoglobin concentration (less than 13g/dl) or serum bilirubin concentration (80 μmol/l).

### Technical aspects of exchange transfusion

The original technique of exchange transfusion as described by Diamond in 1947 involves the insertion of an umbilical venous catheter and the withdrawal of aliquots of baby’s blood (5–20ml) and the infusion of the same volume of donor blood through a system of inline taps. An isovolaemic technique has been described which involves withdrawing blood at a constant rate from an arterial line and the constant infusion at the same rate of the donor blood via a vein. This isovolaemic technique seems to result in greater haemodynamic stability. The volumes of
blood used in an exchange transfusion range from ‘single’ volume (80ml/kg) to double volume (160ml/kg). The single-volume exchange is generally used for correcting anaemia and the double volume for the treatment of hyperbilirubinaemia. The effect of the double-volume exchange is to replace 80–90% of the baby’s blood. This results in the removal of most of the sensitized erythrocytes and also the plasma which contains the circulating antibodies and bilirubin. The double-volume procedure usually takes 1.5–2 hours to complete.

11.6.2.3 Complications and risks
Following exchange transfusion for hyperbilirubinaemia, it is well recognized that there may be a rebound in serum bilirubin. A reduction in serum bilirubin of about 50% occurs at the end of the procedure, but, within 30 minutes, the bilirubin concentration may increase to 60% of the pre-exchange level because of active haemolysis and equilibration between tissues and plasma.

Exchange transfusion is associated with significant risks. A mortality rate of 2–3 per 1000 has been reported, but the rate may be higher in sick, low birthweight babies. Vascular complications may also develop from catheter damage, haemorrhage, incorrect volume infusion, bacteraemia, viral infections, emboli (air or thrombotic), necrotizing enterocolitis or rebound hypoglycaemia. The latter is caused by the increased secretion of insulin in response to the dextrose present in the transfused blood.

11.6.3 An integrated approach to treating neonatal jaundice
The are many published guidelines for the use of phototherapy and exchange blood transfusion. Although phototherapy and exchange transfusion have been shown to reduce hyperbilirubinaemia effectively, there is still no certainty as to the bilirubin level at which intervention should occur. The current levels used in practice are derived from limited scientific data and are based more on consen-
sus. No single serum level will be appropriate for all babies. Additional factors which increase the risk of bilirubin toxicity need to be considered when deciding on the form and timing of treatment. Factors that increase the risk of toxicity are thought to relate to haemolysis, acidosis, asphyxia, low gestation and birthweight, and drugs which alter bilirubin binding (e.g. aminoglycoside antibiotics and frusemide).

Various approaches to the treatment of hyperbilirubinaemia taken from various guidelines are summarized in Tables 11.1, 11.2, 11.3 and 11.4, but these need to be applied with careful consideration of the additional risk factors present. No guidelines exist for neonatal intervention following fetal transfusion.

### Table 11.2 Approaches to the treatment of hyperbilirubinaemia in term infants (≥37 weeks’ gestation)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>No haemolysis and infant well</th>
<th>Haemolysis likely or infant sick</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phototherapy</td>
<td>17–22 (290–325)</td>
<td>13–15 (220–255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exchange transfusion</td>
<td>25–29 (425–500)</td>
<td>17–22 (290–375)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Adapted from Newman and Maisels, 1992.*

### Table 11.3 Approaches to the use of phototherapy and exchange transfusion in low birthweight infants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Birthweight</th>
<th>Phototherapy</th>
<th>Exchange transfusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;1500</td>
<td>5–8 (85–140)</td>
<td>13–16 (220–275)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1500–1999</td>
<td>8–12 (140–200)</td>
<td>16–18 (275–300)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Adapted from Newman and Maisels, 1992.*

### Table 11.4 Use of phototherapy in full-term infants with ABO haemolytic disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age (hours)</th>
<th>Total bilirubin level mg/dl (µmol/l)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;12</td>
<td>10 (170)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12–17</td>
<td>12 (200)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18–23</td>
<td>14 (240)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥24</td>
<td>15 (255)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Adapted from Osborn et al. (1984).*
A newer approach has been the administration of high-dose intravenous immunoglobulin. This is thought to block Fc receptors on macrophages and so reduce the lysis of sensitized red cells. Voto and coworkers demonstrated in a blinded randomized trial of 40 babies with HDFN due to anti-D that the treated group had significantly decreased duration of hospitalization, less haemolysis and less marked increases in bilirubin. They received less treatment with exchange transfusions and simple blood transfusions as a result.38

11.7 Experimental treatments

New approaches for the treatment of neonatal jaundice include high-dose synthetic blood group trisaccharides in ABO haemolytic disease and haem oxygenase inhibitors. Trisaccharides determining the A and B blood groups (Section 2.6.1) have been synthesized and shown to neutralize specific antibodies and to accelerate their dissociation from red cells.39 A trial of A and B trisaccharides has been conducted in babies with severe or moderately severe HDFN due to anti-A or anti-B.39 Thirteen babies (10 group A and three group B) were treated. The severity and duration of hyperbilirubinaemia and the need for exchange transfusion was compared with 21 similar babies previously treated with conventional means (phototherapy and exchange transfusion when indicated). Serum bilirubin concentrations were significantly lower in the treated babies who also required fewer exchange transfusions. In addition, a subgroup of babies tested for anti-A antibody were found to have higher antibody levels after treatment than before, suggesting that the mechanism of action was indeed by displacement of antibodies from the surface of sensitized red cells. A randomized controlled trial is awaited.

Haem oxygenase is an enzyme which catalyses the conversion of haem to biliverdin in the production of bilirubin from haemoglobin breakdown. By inhibiting this step, the production of bilirubin could be reduced. Early human trials in ABO incompatibility confirmed that bilirubin levels were lower in patients treated with tin protoporphyrin.40 However, there are significant concerns about the safety of these agents and therefore little progress has been made.29,40,41

11.8 References


erythropoiesis by intrauterine transfusions in hemolytic disease of the newborn: use of erythropoietin to treat the late anemia. Journal of Pediatrics, 123, 279–84.

The diagnosis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia

Andrew G Hadley
International Blood Group Reference Laboratory, Bristol, UK

12.1 Clinical aspects of diagnosis

Alloimmune thrombocytopenia is caused by maternal antibodies which cross the placenta and bring about the immune destruction of fetal platelets (Section 1.1.3 and 1.3.3). The syndrome occurs in about one in 1500 births (Section 4.2). Fetal alloimmune thrombocytopenia may start early in pregnancy. There is no spontaneous remission of thrombocytopenia in utero and, in the absence of therapy, platelet counts usually fall as gestation progresses. Almost 50% of affected fetuses have a platelet count of less than $20 \times 10^9/l$.\(^1\) In the absence of screening programmes, alloimmune thrombocytopenia is usually recognized at birth when the majority of affected cases have petechiae, purpura or overt bleeding.\(^2\)

Approximately 28% of these affected infants show evidence of central nervous system haemorrhage and up to one-half of these haemorrhages occur prenatally.\(^3\)\(^-\)\(^5\) In utero intracranial haemorrhages may be associated with severe neurological sequelae, porencephaly and optic hypoplasia.\(^6\)

Clinically, alloimmune thrombocytopenia is a diagnosis of exclusion. Typically, infants have no signs of disseminated intravascular coagulation, infection or congenital anomalies – each of which may be associated with thrombocytopenia. Typically, the mother has no history of autoimmune disease, thrombocytopenia or ingestion of drugs which may cause thrombocytopenia – since any of these would suggest a different diagnosis. At delivery, standard laboratory tests show that the neonatal platelet count is low (Section 12.4.1), and the haemoglobin concentration may be low if bleeding has occurred. Maternal platelet counts are normal; this distinguishes alloimmune thrombocytopenia from fetal thrombocytopenia associated with maternal autoimmune thrombocytopenia. Bone marrow biopsy of the infant in alloimmune thrombocytopenia usually reveals normal levels of megakaryocytes, but, rarely, they may be reduced.\(^7\) Cranial ultrasound and computerized tomographic scans may reveal dilated cerebral ventricles and evidence of intraventricular haemorrhage.\(^8\)\(^,\)\(^9\)
Once suspected on clinical grounds, a provisional diagnosis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia should be confirmed by establishing the presence of platelet-specific alloantibodies in the maternal serum which react with fetal platelets. Prospective studies have shown that the frequency of neonatal thrombocytopenia in unselected newborns is around 0.9% and an alloimmune aetiology can be demonstrated in about 30% of these cases. The remainder of this chapter reviews the platelet antigens and antibodies which have been implicated in alloimmune thrombocytopenia and the laboratory assays which may be used to detect and characterize the causative antibodies.

### 12.2 Platelet antigen systems

Platelet alloantigens have been identified by many groups around the world over the past 30 years and this has resulted in the evolution of different terminologies. Since 1990, the Human Platelet Antigen (HPA) nomenclature has been almost universally adopted and the platelet antigens which have been assigned to this system are listed in Table 12.1. Currently, five systems (HPA-1 to HPA-5) and eight low-frequency alloantigens (HPA-6bw to HPA-13bw) have been assigned. Platelet antigens which elicit the alloantibodies involved in fetal thrombocytopenia are carried on membrane glycoproteins involved in cell adhesion and haemostasis. As shown in Table 12.1, several platelet membrane proteins are encoded by allelic genes.

#### 12.2.1 Platelet antigens on glycoprotein IIb/IIIa

The glycoprotein IIb/IIIa (CD41/CD61) is a heterodimer; glycoprotein IIb constitutes the $\alpha$ subunit and glycoprotein IIIa constitutes the $\beta$ subunit of the complex. Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa is the major platelet integrin, present at approximately 50000 copies per platelet. Upon platelet activation, glycoprotein IIb/IIIa is involved in platelet aggregation by binding adhesive proteins such as fibrinogen, fibronectin and von Willebrand factor. A bleeding disorder called Glanzmann’s thrombasthenia results when glycoprotein IIb/IIIa is absent or dysfunctional.

Glycoprotein IIIa is the most polymorphic molecule on the platelet surface apart from HLA class I. The molecular genetic basis of eight of the antigens on glycoprotein IIIa has been determined. Seven of the antigens (HPA-1b, -4b, -6w, -7w, -8w, -10w and -11w) are encoded by relatively rare single nucleotide substitutions in the common wild-type form of glycoprotein IIIa (see Table 12.1 for references). The exception to date is the Oe$^a$ antigen which results from the deletion of three nucleotides from the gene encoding the HPA-1b form of the glycoprotein. The HPA-1a/1b polymorphism is the most frequent cause of alloimmunization and is responsible for most cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia. The immune response to the HPA-1a antigen has been characterized at a molecular level (Section 1.1.3).
12.2.2 Platelet antigens on glycoprotein Ia/IIa
There are approximately 2000 copies of glycoprotein Ia/IIa (CD49/CD29) per platelet. Glycoprotein Ia/IIa is a receptor for collagen and laminin, and a mild bleeding disorder may result when the complex is absent.\(^48\) The molecular genetic basis for two alloantigen systems (HPA-5 and -13w) which reside on glycoprotein Ia have been determined; both result from single nucleotide substitutions (Table 12.1).

12.2.3 Platelet antigens on glycoprotein Ib/IX/V
Glycoprotein Ib/IX/V (CD42) binds von Willebrand factor and mediates the adhesion of platelets to exposed vascular subendothelium under conditions of high shear stress. Glycoprotein Ib comprises two disulphide-bonded subunits, glycoprotein Ib\(_\alpha\) (CD42b) and glycoprotein Ib\(_\beta\) (CD42c). Glycoprotein Ib is noncovalently associated with one glycoprotein IX molecule (CD42a) and glycoprotein V (CD42d). There are approximately 25000 glycoprotein Ib/IX molecules and 12000 glycoprotein V molecules per platelet. The absence of the complex results in an inherited bleeding disorder called Bernard–Soulier syndrome.

Three antigen systems (HPA-2, HPA-12w and Pe\(^a\)) on the glycoprotein Ib/IX/V complex have been described (Table 12.1).

12.3 Platelet antibody specificities involved in alloimmune thrombocytopenia
All the well-characterized platelet-specific alloantigens have been associated with alloimmune thrombocytopenia. Table 12.1 provides a list of reports describing at least one case of alloimmune thrombocytopenia due to each of the antigens.

In Caucasians, anti-HPA-1a is implicated in about 75% of cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia (Table 12.2). This is due in part to the relative immunogenicity of the HPA-1a antigen and to the phenotypic frequency of the antigen; 98% of Caucasians are positive for HPA-1a which means that 2% of pregnant women may potentially produce anti-HPA-1a. In fact, far fewer than 2% of women are immunized because the ability to form anti-HPA-1a is associated with the HLA DR3*0101 genotype (Section 4.2.2).

Antibodies to HPA-5b are responsible for approximately 20% of cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia among Caucasians (Table 12.2). As there are relatively few antigen sites per platelet (Section 12.2.2) the thrombocytopenia due to anti-HPA-5b tends to be mild. Although antibodies to HPA-1a are most commonly implicated in alloimmune thrombocytopenia in Caucasians, HPA-1b is very rare among Blacks and Orientals and so anti-HPA-1a antibodies are also rare.\(^24,50\) Therefore, among Orientals, anti-HPA-4a and anti-HPA-4b cause alloimmune thrombocytopenia more frequently than do other platelet antibodies.
### Table 12.1  Characteristics of the platelet-specific antigens implicated in alloimmune thrombocytopenia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System</th>
<th>Antigen</th>
<th>Alternative names</th>
<th>Glycoprotein</th>
<th>Nucleotide change</th>
<th>Amino acid change</th>
<th>Reference on antigen characterization</th>
<th>References describing alloimmune thrombocytopenia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HPA-1</td>
<td>HPA-1a</td>
<td>Zw&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;, Pl&lt;sup&gt;A1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIIa</td>
<td>T&lt;sup&gt;196&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Leucine&lt;sup&gt;33&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-1b</td>
<td>HPA-1b</td>
<td>Zw&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;, Pl&lt;sup&gt;A2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIIa</td>
<td>C&lt;sup&gt;196&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Proline&lt;sup&gt;33&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-2</td>
<td>HPA-2a</td>
<td>Ko&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIb</td>
<td>C&lt;sup&gt;24&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Threonine&lt;sup&gt;145&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-2b</td>
<td>HPA-2b</td>
<td>Ko&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; Sib&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIb</td>
<td>T&lt;sup&gt;24&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Methionine&lt;sup&gt;145&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-3</td>
<td>HPA-3a</td>
<td>Bak&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;, Lek&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIb</td>
<td>T&lt;sup&gt;2622&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Isoleucine&lt;sup&gt;843&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-3b</td>
<td>HPA-3b</td>
<td>Bak&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIb</td>
<td>G&lt;sup&gt;2622&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Serine&lt;sup&gt;843&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-4</td>
<td>HPA-4a</td>
<td>Yuka&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;, Pen&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIIa</td>
<td>G&lt;sup&gt;526&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Arginine&lt;sup&gt;443&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-4b</td>
<td>HPA-4b</td>
<td>Yuka&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; Pen&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIIa</td>
<td>A&lt;sup&gt;526&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Glutamine&lt;sup&gt;443&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-5</td>
<td>HPA-5a</td>
<td>Br&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;, Zav&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIa</td>
<td>G&lt;sup&gt;1648&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Glutamic acid&lt;sup&gt;505&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-5b</td>
<td>HPA-5b</td>
<td>Br&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;, Zav&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;, Hc&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIa</td>
<td>A&lt;sup&gt;1648&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Lysine&lt;sup&gt;505&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-6w</td>
<td>HPA-6bw</td>
<td>Ca&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;, Tu&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIIa</td>
<td>G&lt;sup&gt;1564&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Arginine&lt;sup&gt;489&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-7w</td>
<td>HPA-7bw</td>
<td>Mo</td>
<td>GPIIIa</td>
<td>C&lt;sup&gt;1267&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Proline&lt;sup&gt;407&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-8w</td>
<td>HPA-8bw</td>
<td>Sr&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIIa</td>
<td>T&lt;sup&gt;2004&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Arginine&lt;sup&gt;636&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-9w</td>
<td>HPA-9bw</td>
<td>Max&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIb</td>
<td>G&lt;sup&gt;2603&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Valine&lt;sup&gt;487&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-10w</td>
<td>HPA-10bw</td>
<td>La&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIIa</td>
<td>G&lt;sup&gt;1281&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Methionine&lt;sup&gt;837&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-11w</td>
<td>HPA-11bw</td>
<td>Gro&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIIa</td>
<td>A&lt;sup&gt;1281&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Arginine&lt;sup&gt;62&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-12w</td>
<td>HPA-12bw</td>
<td>Iy&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIb</td>
<td>G&lt;sup&gt;141&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Glutamine&lt;sup&gt;62&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-13w</td>
<td>HPA-13bw</td>
<td>Sit&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GPIIa</td>
<td>C&lt;sup&gt;2531&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Glycine&lt;sup&gt;55&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>T&lt;sup&gt;2531&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Glutamic acid&lt;sup&gt;55&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Oe&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Threonine&lt;sup&gt;799&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Va&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Methionine&lt;sup&gt;399&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gov&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gov&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pe&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dy&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
There are isolated reports which have ascribed neonatal thrombocytopenia to the presence of maternal anti-HLA antibodies. The mechanism of platelet destruction in these cases is uncertain because it is not clear how antibodies specific for antigens which are expressed on a variety of fetal tissues would localize to the fetal platelets. It may be that the thrombocytopenia in these rare cases is caused by platelet-specific antibodies which have not been detected by the techniques presently available. Indeed, epidemiological studies have shown that the platelet counts of fetuses delivered by women with anti-HLA antibodies are not statistically lower than counts in fetuses of women without anti-HLA antibodies.

### 12.4 Laboratory diagnosis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia

#### 12.4.1 Haematology

The neonatal full blood count usually reveals isolated thrombocytopenia from birth. In infants with alloimmune thrombocytopenia due to anti-HPA-1a, initial platelet counts are less than $10 \times 10^9/l$ in approximately 30% of cases, and $10–30 \times 10^9/l$ in approximately 25% of cases. Platelet counts may decrease further during the first 48 hours after delivery, reaching counts of less than $10 \times 10^9/l$ in approximately 50% of cases.

The mother’s platelet count is usually normal. However, approximately 8% of all pregnant women develop mild thrombocytopenia ($100–150 \times 10^9/l$) during the second and third trimester of pregnancy. The infants of these women do not

---

**Table 12.2** Antibodies implicated in alloimmune thrombocytopenia in a Caucasian population

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>% cases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HPA-1a</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-5b</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-1a + HPA-5b</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-3a</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-2b</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-1b</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-5a</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-8b</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-12bw</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-13bw</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-4b</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Data from Kroll et al.49
appear to be at any additional risk of developing thrombocytopenia. However, it is difficult to distinguish this gestational thrombocytopenia from autoimmune thrombocytopenia and so it should not be assumed that the thrombocytopenia in infants delivered by mothers with mild thrombocytopenia is due to autoantibodies. It is therefore important to test for the presence of maternal alloantibodies, even in the cases of maternal thrombocytopenia.

12.4.2 Assays for the detection of antiplatelet antibodies

Once suspected on clinical grounds, a provisional diagnosis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia should be confirmed by demonstrating the presence of platelet-specific alloantibodies in the maternal serum. It is also useful to perform platelet antigen typing to show that the mother’s platelets lack the antigen to which antibodies have been formed. Phenotyping or genotyping of the father or infant may also be performed to demonstrate that the infant’s platelets express the antigen to which the mother has been immunized. Finally, a crossmatch of maternal serum against paternal platelets should be performed to ensure the detection of antibodies to low-frequency antigens. Knowledge of the ethnic background of the family is useful because phenotypic frequencies vary between ethnic groups. In addition to testing maternal serum, female siblings of the mother are at increased risk and should be tested prospectively before the birth of their first child in order to identify potential cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

It should be emphasized that therapy, particularly the transfusion of HPA-1a-negative, HPA-5b-negative platelets, should not be postponed if there is delay or difficulty in confirming the provisional diagnosis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

12.4.2.1 The platelet immunofluorescence test

The platelet indirect immunofluorescence test (PIFT) is probably the most widely used technique for demonstrating the presence of platelet-binding immunoglobulins in serum or plasma. In this test, platelets are incubated with maternal serum and then washed. The platelets are then incubated with an anti-IgG reagent which is conjugated with a fluorochrome such as fluorescein isothiocyanate (which emits green fluorescence) or phycoerythrin (which emits red fluorescence). Platelet fluorescence is then assessed using a microscope equipped with UV illumination or, preferably, measured using a flow cytometer. Elevated levels of platelet membrane-associated fluorescence indicate the presence of platelet-binding antibodies.

12.4.2.2 Platelet glycoprotein-specific assays

Platelets express HLA class I antigens in addition to the glycoproteins implicated in alloimmune thrombocytopenia. Thus, the indirect immunofluorescence test is not
able to distinguish platelet-specific antibodies from anti-HLA antibodies. For this reason, the indirect immunofluorescence test is often performed together with a glycoprotein-specific assay. The basis for one such assay, the monoclonal antibody immobilization of platelet antigens assay (MAIPA), is shown diagrammatically in Figure 12.1. Platelets of known phenotype are first incubated with maternal serum and then washed. Sensitized platelets are then incubated with a (murine) monoclonal antibody which is specific for one of the platelet glycoproteins implicated in

---

**Figure 12.1** Diagrammatic representation of the monoclonal antibody immobilization of platelet antigens assay.
alloimmune thrombocytopenia. Following a wash step, the platelets are solubilized using a detergent and the lysates are added to wells of a microtitre plate coated with antimouse IgG antibodies. In this way, complexes of maternal antiplatelet glycoprotein antibody/platelet glycoprotein/monoclonal antibody are specifically immobilized in wells of the microtitre plate. Since anti-HLA antibodies complexed with HLA antigens are not immobilized, they are removed by washing. The presence of glycoprotein-specific (immobilized) maternal antibody is then determined by the addition of an enzyme-conjugated anti-human IgG reagent to catalyse a colorimetric reaction upon the addition of a suitable substrate. Antibody specificity may be deduced by determining the reactivity of antibodies with a selected panel of typed platelets.

Assays using monoclonal antibodies to immobilize platelet antigens are specific and sensitive, but are relatively laborious and are generally performed only in specialist laboratories. Increasingly, kits for detecting platelet antibodies are becoming commercially available. These kits usually employ isolated platelet glycoproteins immobilized in wells of a microtitre plate. They are, therefore, convenient and rapid, eliminating the need for panels of typed platelets to determine antibody specificity. However, they may not be as sensitive as the MAIPA assay described above and may not detect all antibodies implicated in alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

12.4.3 DNA-based genotyping

Determining which alloantigens are expressed on platelets from a particular individual is important in order to select panels of typed platelets which can then be used to characterize platelet-specific antibodies in maternal sera. Platelet typing is also important to establish an incompatibility between a mother and her fetus or infant. International workshops have revealed relatively poor levels of agreement between laboratories using serological techniques for platelet typing. Moreover, antisera containing platelet-specific antibodies to many of the platelet antigens are scarce.

Since the molecular genetic basis for most of the platelet antigens is now known, DNA-based genotyping techniques are the methods of choice for platelet typing. These methods are based on the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (Section 7.2). Several assays have been described, but many laboratories have chosen to use techniques based on allele-specific PCR. In this approach, primers are designed to anneal to the 3’ end of the allele to be detected, so that a mismatch on the alternative allele does not result in DNA amplification and no PCR product results. This approach is useful when applied to typing the diallelic platelet antigens most commonly implicated in alloimmune thrombocytopenia. However, it is less useful for antigens with very low frequencies when it is not possible to validate the stringency of the PCR reaction. Recently, Epstein–Barr virus-transformed B-lymphoblastoid
cell lines have been developed as a reference source of DNA for platelet antigen genotyping.61

Fetal genotyping may be used to establish the phenotype of a fetus by analysing the fetal DNA present in samples of amniotic fluid or chorionic villus. This is particularly useful in the clinical management of alloimmunized pregnant women who have had a previously affected fetus but where the father is heterozygous for the implicated alloantigen. In this way, it is possible to establish whether or not the fetus is antigen positive and at risk of developing alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

12.4.4 Antibody characteristics and disease severity

12.4.4.1 Antibody specificity

It is generally accepted that antibodies to HPA-5b usually result in a less severe form of alloimmune thrombocytopenia than do antibodies to HPA-1a.62 This has been attributed to the lower expression of the glycoprotein carrying HPA-5 system antigens; there are about 2000 copies of glycoprotein Ia per platelet compared with 50000 copies of glycoprotein IIb/IIIa which carries the HPA-1 system antigens. However, the clinical course of fetal thrombocytopenia due to HPA-5 system antibodies is not always mild and severe cases of fetal thrombocytopenia due to anti-HPA-5a and anti-HPA-5b have been described.63,64 This variability might be related to an inherited predisposition in some individuals to express relatively high levels of glycoprotein Ia.

12.4.4.2 Antibody concentration

Some recent reports have suggested that the concentration of maternal anti-HPA-1a antibodies may be predictive of disease severity. Williamson et al.65 reported a study of 46 women with anti-HPA-1a where severe thrombocytopenia was associated with third trimester anti-HPA-1a titres in the MAIPA assay (Section 12.4.2.2) of over 32. In contrast, severe thrombocytopenia was not observed in babies of women with anti-HPA-1a antibodies which were transient or only detectable postnatally. Similarly, in a study of 28 women with anti-HPA-1a, Husebekk et al.66 found that antibody levels tended to rise towards the end of gestation and, in all but two cases, antibody levels measured in an ELISA technique were predictive for the severity of thrombocytopenia in the newborn. However, there are several reports of severe fetal thrombocytopenia where anti-HPA-1a antibodies only became detectable in the maternal plasma several weeks after delivery.67

12.5 Future perspectives

An ongoing challenge in the clinical management of platelet-alloimmunized women is the difficulty in predicting the severity of fetal thrombocytopenia using
assays which measure the levels of antibodies in maternal plasma. One approach may be to measure the biological activity of platelet-specific antibodies, as has been done successfully to predict the severity of HDFN (Section 8.4.4). Preliminary data suggest that the chemiluminescence test might be used to measure the metabolic response of human monocytes to sensitized platelets and that the extent of the response may correspond with the severity of fetal thrombocytopenia.68,69

Several groups have recently described the production of soluble recombinant platelet glycoproteins. For example, Peterson et al.70 used a baculovirus expression system to produce soluble glycoprotein IIb/IIIa complexes. These complexes assumed an active ligand-binding conformation and contained epitopes for a range of glycoprotein-specific monoclonal and human antibodies. Thus, it seems likely that recombinant glycoproteins will herald the introduction of improved techniques for the detection of platelet-specific antibodies. An important feature of this technology is the ability to introduce new alloantigens by site-directed mutagenesis. This should facilitate the detection of antibodies to rare platelet-specific alloantigens as well as obviate the need to maintain panels of typed platelets.

12.6 References


40 Santosso S, Amrhein J, Hofmann HA et al. (1999). A point mutation Thr(799)Met on the
alpha(2) integrin leads to the formation of new human platelet alloantigen Sit(a) and affects collagen-induced aggregation. *Blood*, 94, 4103–11.


Diagnosis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia

The immunological diagnosis of alloimmune neutropenia

Geoff Lucas
International Blood Group Reference Laboratory, Bristol, UK

13.1 Introduction
Alloimmune neutropenia is caused by the placental transfer of maternal antibodies which recognize neutrophil antigens inherited by the fetus from the father. Alloimmune neutropenia is characterized by a severe but transient neutropenia and is the neutrophil equivalent of haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn and alloimmune thrombocytopenia. Neutrophils have a fundamental role in innate immunity and the inflammatory response, so neutropenic patients often present with local or systemic infections. The diagnosis of alloimmune neutropenia is dependent on demonstrating the presence of maternal antibodies which react with the infant's neutrophils. The target antigens are only expressed on mature polymorphonuclear neutrophils and these have been shown to be controlled by a number of different genetic loci.

13.2 Pathophysiology and clinical history

13.2.1 Immuneogenicity of fetal neutrophils
The reported incidence of immunization against neutrophil alloantigens during pregnancy varies from 0.1% to 20%.\textsuperscript{1-3} Estimates of the incidence of alloimmune neutropenia are considerably lower, at less than 0.1% and 0.2%, for the German and US populations, respectively.\textsuperscript{4-6} The relatively low numbers of circulating neutrophils compared with red cells and platelets implies that maternal alloimmunization against fetal neutrophil-specific antigens resulting from fetomaternal haemorrhage might be infrequent. However, it is possible that significant numbers of granulocytes reach the maternal circulation by active migration through tissues in a process known as diapedesis.

13.2.2 Clinical manifestations and haematological findings
Alloimmune neutropenia is a rare clinical condition with a number of characteristic features. The disorder usually has a benign course with infants developing mild
infections, predominantly of the skin and mucosal membranes, often with gram-positive bacteria. However, life-threatening infections resulting in pneumonia and meningitis can also develop and a mortality of approximately 5% of affected infants has been reported. In common with alloimmune thrombocytopenia, the condition may occur in the first-born infant. Haematological investigation reveals a severe neutropenia (usually less than 0.5 × 10^9/l) which may persist for between 3 and 28 weeks; the neutropenia may be accompanied by monocytosis. Neutrophil counts immediately after birth may be normal, with the neutropenia developing in the following few days. An explanation of this phenomenon is that the phagocytic system for the destruction of sensitized neutrophils may mature after birth, removing opsonised neutrophils from the circulation. There is evidence that the appropriate antigens are expressed on neonatal neutrophils in the first days of life. The persistence of the cytopenia in alloimmune neutropenia compared with alloimmune thrombocytopenia is a remarkable feature of this condition and probably occurs because the target antigens in alloimmune neutropenia are expressed on a relatively small mass of mature precursor forms in the bone marrow or circulating neutrophils. Consequently, there is selective destruction of these mature forms while the immature precursor forms in the bone marrow remain unaffected. This is consistent with the bone marrow picture, which is typically either normal or hypercellular with a left-shift in appearance. As in the other alloimmune cytopenias, the duration of neutropenia in the infant is also dependent on the rate of production and turnover of target cells and the half-life of the maternal IgG alloantibodies.

It is likely that alloimmune neutropenia is often undiagnosed, especially if the infant is asymptomatic at birth, since differential white cell counts are rarely performed at delivery and because clinical awareness of the condition may be low. The clinical underdiagnosis is complicated by a general lack of appropriate serological expertise. Even when alloimmune neutropenia is recognized, clinical management is usually conservative since the condition is self-resolving. Parents should be advised that affected infants should be protected from potentially infectious agents and that greater attention be given to hygiene during the period of neutropenia. The use of prophylactic antibiotics may be appropriate and both intravenous IgG and granulocyte colony-stimulating factor may be of benefit in severely affected cases.

13.2.3 Differential diagnosis

Other disease processes, drugs and environmental factors may all result in neutropenia or impair the functional integrity of neutrophils and hence increase susceptibility to infection. In addition, a number of different causes of neutropenia are specifically recognized in early childhood. These may be divided into disorders
arising from defective neutrophil production or release from the bone marrow, and into those disorders caused by excessive neutrophil destruction or consumption (Table 13.1). Two other conditions which result from antibody-mediated neutrophil destruction, namely transitory congenital neutropenia and autoimmune neutropenia of infancy, are worthy of further discussion since they may complicate the differential diagnosis of alloimmune neutropenia at both clinical and laboratory levels.

13.2.3.1 Transitory congenital neutropenia

Transient neutropenia can be observed in infants born to mothers with autoimmune neutropenia. In this condition, maternal transfer of antineutrophil antibodies results in neonatal neutropenia. The mother is also neutropenic and the antibodies can be shown to react with maternal neutrophils.\(^\text{12}\)

13.2.3.2 Autoimmune neutropenia of infancy

The clinical and serological characteristics of autoimmune neutropenia of infancy, originally documented as chronic benign neutropenia,\(^\text{13}\) have been confirmed in a number of studies.\(^\text{14-16}\) Autoimmune neutropenia of infancy is characterized by an isolated neutropenia often associated with an accompanying monocytosis. Onset of the disease usually occurs between the ages of 4 months and 2 years, but has been observed 1 month after birth.\(^\text{13,16}\) The incidence of the disorder has been estimated as approximately one in 100000.\(^\text{17}\) Autoimmune neutropenia of infancy is a self-resolving condition in which spontaneous remission occurs in 95% of patients.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 13.1 Neutropenic syndromes of early childhood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Failures of production or altered release from bone marrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclic neutropenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infantile genetic agranulocytosis (Kostmann’s syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial benign chronic neutropenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reticular dysgenesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aplastic anaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lazy leukocyte syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myelokathexis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive neutrophil consumption or destruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutropenias secondary to bacterial and viral infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immune-mediated neutropenias – transitory congenital neutropenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autoimmune neutropenia of infancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alloimmune neutropenia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(237\) Diagnosis of alloimmune neutropenia
between 7 and 24 months of age. Serological studies reveal the presence of granulo-
cyte-specific IgG or IgM autoantibodies and, although the incidence in the reported
studies varies considerably, anti-HNA-1a antibodies (Section 13.3.2.1) are often
identified. Despite an absence of transfusions, antibody reactivity against lympho-
cytes is also observed in some patients. The course of the disease, which is associated
with infections of the skin, middle ear, throat and respiratory and digestive tracts,
is generally relatively benign. Clinical management consists largely of the use of
prophylactic antibiotics. The disorder has been attributed to a suppressor T-
lymphocyte deficiency and the production of anti-HNA-1a antibodies has been
linked to the HLA-DR2 haplotype. The temporal overlap in the presentation of
alloimmune neutropenia and autoimmune neutropenia of infancy, combined with
the similarity of clinical features, may pose a clinical problem in diagnosis, especially
if alloimmune neutropenia is suspected some months after birth or if autoimmune
neutropenia of infancy presents early. However, in the laboratory, autoimmune neutro-
penia of infancy can be readily differentiated from alloimmune neutropenia by the
lack of anti-neutrophil autoantibodies in the maternal serum.

13.3 The structure and function of antigens involved in alloimmune
neutropenia

Granulocyte membrane antigens may be divided into three types:
(1) The granulocyte-specific antigens, many of which have been localized to Fcγ
receptor IIIb (CD16).
(2) The ‘shared’ antigens which often have a limited distribution among other cell
types, usually other leukocytes. Some of the ‘shared antigens’ have been local-
ized to CD11/18.
(3) The ‘common’ antigens which have a wider tissue distribution, being found on
several blood and tissue cells. The ‘common’ antigens include the I and P blood
group systems, Leα and sialyl-Leα (CD15) and HLA class I. These antigens are
not involved in alloimmune neutropenia and so will not be discussed further.

13.3.1 Nomenclature

The nomenclature originally proposed for these antigens used the letter N, to indi-
cate neutrophil specificity (even though many studies used granulocytes rather
than purified neutrophils), followed by a capital letter to designate the locus of the
gene controlling the production of the antigen, followed by a number designating
a specific allele at that locus, e.g. NA1. Subsequently, a number of antigens, many
of which have a wider distribution, have been described which do not follow this
convention. A different nomenclature (the human neutrophil antigens – HNA –
system) has recently been proposed which includes both granulocyte-specific and
more widely distributed antigens. Those antigens, which have not been incorporated into the proposed system, because of insufficient scientific information, will continue to be referred to by the original acronym. The HNA nomenclature is used throughout this chapter, but the old acronyms are also presented in Tables 13.2 and 13.3, since the majority of publications to date have used this system.

13.3.2 Granulocyte-specific antigens

13.3.2.1 Polymorphisms of Fcγ receptor IIIb (CD16)

Five antigens termed HNA-1a, HNA-1b, HNA-1c, LAN and SAR are located on Fcγ receptor IIIb. The human Fcγ receptor IIIb (CD16) molecule is a member of the immunoglobulin superfamily which is distinct from, but closely related to, other human receptors for the Fc domain of IgG (Fcγ receptors). Fcγ receptor IIIb is a protein composed of approximately 190 amino acids encoded by the FcγRIIIB gene located on human chromosome 1. The molecule has an extracellular region comprising two disulphide-bonded ‘immunoglobulin-like’ domains and is linked to the plasma membrane via a glycosylphosphatidylinositol anchor. Fcγ receptor IIIb has a low affinity for IgG and is selectively expressed on neutrophils. In immunoprecipitation and SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis studies, Fcγ receptor IIIb migrates as a broad band with a molecular weight between 50kD and 80kD. This variation in apparent molecular weight is the result of differences in glycosylation between FcγRIIIB^HNA-1a (HNA-1a) and FcγRIIIB^HNA-1b (HNA-1b). The differences in glycosylation arise from amino acid differences between HNA-1a and HNA-1b at positions 65 and 82, which result in two additional glycosylation sites in HNA-1b. At the DNA level, there are five nucleotide differences between the FcγRIIIB^HNA-1a and FcγRIIIB^HNA-1b genes, but only four of these substitutions give rise to changes in amino acids (Figure 13.1 and Table 13.2). Large-scale studies of the incidence of granulocyte-specific antigens in different ethnic groups have not been performed, but preliminary data have suggested that the frequency of the HNA-1a antigen is more common in Japanese, Chinese and Korean populations than in Caucasians. An antigen referred to as NC1 has been reported, but evidence now suggests that NC1 is identical to HNA-1b.

The HNA-1c antigen is associated with a single base mutation in the FcγRIIIB gene. The nucleotide sequence of the HNA-1c allele is identical to the FcγRIIIB^HNA-1b sequence except for the substitution of an adenine for cytosine at position 266. This nucleotide substitution results in an amino acid substitution of alanine by aspartic acid at position 78 of FcγRIIIB (Figure 13.1). Gene duplication appears to have led to many HNA-1c-positive individuals having three rather than two FcγRIIIB genes. Normally, there are between 100,000 and 200,000 copies of Fcγ receptor IIIb per neutrophil, but individuals with three FcγRIIIB genes express proportionately greater amounts of Fcγ receptor IIIb.
Table 13.2  Granulocyte-specific alloantigens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HNA nomenclature</th>
<th>Original name of system</th>
<th>Original acronym for antigen</th>
<th>Caucasian phenotype frequency</th>
<th>Caucasian gene frequency</th>
<th>Glycoprotein</th>
<th>Nucleotide change</th>
<th>Amino acid change</th>
<th>References: description of antigen</th>
<th>References: genetic basis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HNA-1a</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA1</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>FcγRIIib</td>
<td>G¹⁰⁸</td>
<td>Arginine³⁶</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>30, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C¹¹⁴</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A¹⁹⁷</td>
<td>Asparagine⁶⁵</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>G²⁴⁷</td>
<td>Aspartic acid⁸²</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>G³¹⁹</td>
<td>Valine¹⁰⁶</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNA-1b</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA2</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>FcγRIIib</td>
<td>C¹⁰⁸</td>
<td>Serine³⁶</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>30, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>T¹¹⁴</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>G¹⁹⁷</td>
<td>Serine⁶⁵</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A²⁴⁷</td>
<td>Asparagine⁸²</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A³¹⁹</td>
<td>Isoleucine¹⁰⁶</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNA-1c</td>
<td>SH</td>
<td>SH+</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>FcγRIIib</td>
<td>A²⁶⁶</td>
<td>Aspartic acid⁷⁸</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SH−</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C²⁶⁶</td>
<td>Alanine⁷⁸</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNA-2a</td>
<td>NB</td>
<td>NB1</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>56–64kD</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>34, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NB2</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>45–56kD</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NC</td>
<td>NC1*</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>ND1</td>
<td>98.5</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NE</td>
<td>NE1</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LAN</td>
<td>LAN⁸⁸</td>
<td>&gt;99</td>
<td></td>
<td>FcγRIIib</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SAR</td>
<td>SAR⁸⁸</td>
<td>&gt;99</td>
<td></td>
<td>FcγRIIib</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

The single nucleotide codes presented for HNA-1a and HNA-1b have been calculated from the data given in the original publication. nk is not known.

* NC1 has been shown to be identical to HNA-1b.³⁹

### Table 13.3 Alloantigens expressed on granulocytes and other cell types (shared antigens)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HNA nomenclature</th>
<th>Original name of system</th>
<th>Original acronym for antigen</th>
<th>Caucasian phenotype frequency %</th>
<th>Caucasian gene frequency %</th>
<th>Glycoprotein</th>
<th>Nucleotide change</th>
<th>Amino acid change</th>
<th>References: description of antigen</th>
<th>References: genetic basis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>HNA-57</td>
<td>9a</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>21, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five</td>
<td></td>
<td>5a</td>
<td>0.181</td>
<td></td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNA-3a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>23, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNA-4a</td>
<td>Mart</td>
<td>Marta</td>
<td>99.1</td>
<td>0.906</td>
<td>CD11b</td>
<td>G302</td>
<td>Arginine61</td>
<td>25, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Martb</td>
<td>0.66/0.819</td>
<td>70–95kD</td>
<td>CD11b</td>
<td>A302</td>
<td>Histidine61</td>
<td>23, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNA-5a</td>
<td>Ond</td>
<td>Onda</td>
<td>&gt;99</td>
<td>&gt;0.91</td>
<td>CD11a</td>
<td>G2466</td>
<td>Arginine766</td>
<td>27, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ondt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CD11a</td>
<td>C2466</td>
<td>Threonine766</td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SL</td>
<td>SL</td>
<td>SLa</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>nk</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

nk is not known

**Source:** This table first appeared in an article entitled ‘Platelet and granulocyte glycoprotein polymorphisms’ by GF Lucas & PM Metcalfe (2000). *Transfusion Medicine, 10*, 157–74.
LAN and SAR are high-frequency antigens which have been localized to Fcγ/H9253 receptor IIIb using antisera from women who gave birth to neutropenic infants. The anti-LAN serum, from an Australian aboriginal woman, was reactive with neutrophils from over 99% of Caucasians. The anti-SAR serum was from a Turkish woman and reacted with neutrophils from all of 150 German blood donors tested. The LAN and SAR antigens are defined solely by human antisera; the molecular localization of these antigens on Fcγ/H9253 receptor IIIb is not known.

13.3.2.2 The HNA-2a antigen

The HNA-2a (NB1) antigen is expressed on granulocytes from 97% of the population. HNA-2a is associated with a 56–64 kD glycosylphosphatidylinositol anchor-linked glycoprotein and is expressed on the plasma membrane surface and intracellularly on the membranes of small vesicles and specific granules. Anti-NB2 antibodies do not react with this 56–64 kD glycoprotein. At present, it seems that antibodies with the presumed anti-NB2 specificity do not recognize the antithetical antigen to HNA-2a. This conclusion is supported by the finding that the NB2-bearing glycoprotein has a smaller molecular weight of 46–56 kD. Furthermore, NB2 has a serological reactivity identical to 9a (human monocyte antigen, HMA-1), but the gene frequencies for HNA-2a and 9a are inconsistent with simple allelism between these antigens.

Figure 13.1 Schematic representation of the amino acid substitutions resulting in the HNA-1a, -1b and -1c forms of Fcγ receptor IIIb, adapted from the illustration published by Salmon et al. The positions of the amino acids are noted according to the numbering system of Ravetech and Perussia.

LAN and SAR are high-frequency antigens which have been localized to Fcγ receptor IIIb using antisera from women who gave birth to neutropenic infants. The anti-LAN serum, from an Australian aboriginal woman, was reactive with neutrophils from over 99% of Caucasians. The anti-SAR serum was from a Turkish woman and reacted with neutrophils from all of 150 German blood donors tested. The LAN and SAR antigens are defined solely by human antisera; the molecular localization of these antigens on Fcγ receptor IIIb is not known.

13.3.2.2 The HNA-2a antigen

The HNA-2a (NB1) antigen is expressed on granulocytes from 97% of the population. HNA-2a is associated with a 56–64 kD glycosylphosphatidylinositol anchor-linked glycoprotein and is expressed on the plasma membrane surface and intracellularly on the membranes of small vesicles and specific granules. Anti-NB2 antibodies do not react with this 56–64 kD glycoprotein. At present, it seems that antibodies with the presumed anti-NB2 specificity do not recognize the antithetical antigen to HNA-2a. This conclusion is supported by the finding that the NB2-bearing glycoprotein has a smaller molecular weight of 46–56 kD. Furthermore, NB2 has a serological reactivity identical to 9a (human monocyte antigen, HMA-1), but the gene frequencies for HNA-2a and 9a are inconsistent with simple allelism between these antigens.
13.3.2.3 The ND and NE antigens
In contrast to the HNA-1a, -1b, -1c and -2a, and LAN and SAR antigens, which were defined using alloantibodies, the ND1 antigen and the NE1 antigen were each defined by autoantibodies obtained from a single patient. The molecular basis and nature of the ND and NE antigens are unknown.

13.3.3 ‘Shared’ antigens

13.3.3.1 Polymorphisms of CD11/18
The HNA-4a and HNA-5a antigens are located on the β2-integrins CD11b/CD18 and CD11a/CD18, respectively. These integrins belong to a family of heterodimers sharing the common β subunit CD18 (95kD) noncovalently associated with one of three different α subunits – namely, CD11a (80kD), CD11b (165kD) or CD11c (150kD). CD11a is expressed on all leukocytes while CD11b (C3bi receptor) and CD11c are expressed on granulocytes, monocytes and natural killer cells.

Studies using glycoprotein-specific monoclonal antibodies have shown that the HNA-5a antigen is located on CD11a whereas the HNA-4a antigen is located on CD11b. At the molecular level, both these antigens result from single nucleotide substitutions, causing amino acid dimorphisms of the corresponding α chains (Table 13.3). The HNA-4a antigen has a calculated gene frequency of 0.906 and is expressed on granulocytes, monocytes and a subpopulation of T lymphocytes. The HNA-5a antigen is detected in 91.8% of Dutch individuals and is expressed on granulocytes, monocytes, and T and B lymphocytes.

13.3.3.2 The five system antigens
The biallelic five system antigens (now referred to as 5a and HNA-3a – see Table 13.3) were identified using antisera obtained from women immunized during pregnancy. The five system antigens were originally thought to be expressed on granulocytes, platelets, lymphocytes, kidney, spleen and lymph node tissue. More recent evidence suggests that the five system may be granulocyte specific and that the previously reported wider tissue distribution was an artefact caused by the contamination of antisera with other alloantibodies, probably anti-HLA. The genes encoding five system antigens have been localized to human chromosome 4. The HNA-3a antigen has been localized to a granulocyte glycoprotein with a molecular weight of 70–95kD. Antisera to the 5a antigen are rare and, consequently, both the clinical significance and the molecular location of this antigen remain unknown.

13.3.3.3 The SL antigen
The SL antigen was originally defined by an antiserum from a mother who gave birth to a neutropenic infant. The antiserum reacted with granulocytes and T
lymphocytes from 66% of individuals. The SL antigen is not associated with HNA-1a, -1b, -2a, -3a, -4a or -5a, NB2, NC1 or 9a antigens, or the Fcγ receptor IIIb molecule. The molecule carrying the SL antigen could not be identified by immunoblotting or immunoprecipitation studies.\textsuperscript{28}

13.3.3.4 The 9a antigen

An antiserum from a multiparous blood donor defined a granulocyte-specific antigen known as 9a, which has a gene frequency of 0.41.\textsuperscript{21} More recently, the 9a antigen has been reported to be related to NB2 and human monocyte antigen 1 and it should, therefore, be classified as a 'shared' antigen.\textsuperscript{22} The molecular localization of the 9a antigen is not known.

13.3.3.5 Other antigens

A number of other granulocyte antigens have been described, but their involvement in alloimmune neutropenia has not been established. These include the granulocyte-specific HGA-3 system, which is comprised of five alleles.\textsuperscript{57} Further investigation of this system has not been possible because of the rarity of antisera. Other studies have described two further granulocyte-specific antigen systems (GA, GB, GC and Gr1, Gr2), a granulocyte–monocyte antigen (HGA-1) and AYD, an antigen present on granulocytes, monocytes and endothelial cells.\textsuperscript{15}

13.3.4 Antibody specificities involved in alloimmune neutropenia

Alloimmune neutropenia is usually caused by fetomaternal incompatibility with respect to the HNA-1a, -1b, -1c, -2a and -2b antigens,\textsuperscript{5,6,32,58} but also may result from incompatibility with respect to high-frequency antigens\textsuperscript{42,44} and, possibly, five system antigens.\textsuperscript{24} Isoimmune neutropenia may also occur in the infants of women who lack Fcγ receptor IIIb and who become immunized against Fcγ receptor IIIb during pregnancy.\textsuperscript{59,60}

13.3.5 The function of granulocyte antigens

Until recently, the importance of granulocyte antigens was restricted to their ability to induce the formation of antibodies. However, there is also evidence that certain granulocyte polymorphisms may affect cellular function and may be associated with an increased risk of disease. The HNA-1a and -1b antigens influence the function of Fcγ receptor IIIb; granulocytes from HNA-1a individuals exhibit greater levels of phagocytosis than granulocytes from HNA-1b individuals.\textsuperscript{61} A further functional polymorphism is exhibited on granulocytes in which Fcγ receptor IIa exists as a high responder (HR) or low responder (LR) form, as determined by two amino acid substitutions.\textsuperscript{45,46} The FcγRIIa\textsuperscript{LR} phenotype enables effective interaction with IgG2 immune complexes and is associated with reduced infections by
encapsulated bacteria such as *Haemophilus influenzae* and *Staphylococcus pneumoniae*, which elicit a predominantly IgG2 response. The FcγRIIaLR form may also confer resistance against *Neisseria meningitidis* infections. The coexpression of Fcγ receptor Ila and Fcγ receptor IIIb on granulocytes raises the possibility that particular combinations of Fcγ receptor polymorphisms may influence susceptibility to bacterial infections and immune responses.

### 13.4 Laboratory diagnosis of alloimmune neutropenia

The laboratory diagnosis of alloimmune neutropenia involves the detection of granulocyte antibodies, phenotyping and genotyping studies, and, critically, performance of a crossmatch to demonstrate the reactivity of antibodies in maternal serum with paternal, fetal and/or neonatal neutrophils.

#### 13.4.1 Assays for granulocyte antibodies

Granulocytes represent a small percentage of the circulating blood cells. They are difficult to isolate and must be freshly prepared for in vitro studies. Furthermore, granulocytes are functionally active cells which may aggregate upon stimulation and may up- or downregulate membrane surface antigens during isolation procedures, thereby influencing the number of antibody-binding sites. Granulocytes also have a number of different membrane surface antigens, including HLA class I antigens, which may complicate the results of antibody-binding studies involving human sera. As a result, a wide range of techniques have been developed for granulocyte antibody detection over the last 25 years, but only a small number have proved suitable for reliable routine use. A combination of two techniques, the granulocyte agglutination test (GAT) and the granulocyte immunofluorescence test (GIFT), is currently regarded as optimal for antibody detection because neither technique used in isolation can detect all granulocyte antibodies. The GAT relies on an interaction between viable granulocytes in the presence of sera containing IgG or IgM granulocyte-reactive antibodies over several hours. The granulocytes migrate together to form aggregates in a time- and temperature-dependent process. The GAT appears to provide the most reliable method for detecting antibody-5b antibodies. The absence of a cell washing step after granulocytes have been sensitized in the GAT may increase the ability of this test to detect low affinity antibodies. The GAT does, however, require lengthy incubation periods for optimal sensitivity. Moreover, the degree of agglutination needs to be assessed microscopically.

The GIFT measures membrane-bound antibodies by the use of anti-human immunoglobulin reagents labelled with a fluorescent compound such as fluorescein isothiocyanate. In the original method, granulocyte-associated fluorescence
was assessed by microscopy. Many laboratories now use flow cytometry since this provides a semiquantitative endpoint, together with increased sensitivity and reliability. Furthermore, flow cytometry provides a ready distinction between intact granulocytes and those with disrupted cell membranes. The latter nonspecifically bind fluorescein-labelled antibodies and often cause problems of interpretation in microscopically assessed immunofluorescence assays.

The GAT and GIFT have a continuing and fundamental role in granulocyte serology. However, many human antisera contain antibodies which react with a number of granulocyte antigens rather than just one, and, consequently, both the GAT and GIFT are prone to interference from immune complexes and HLA class I antibodies (unless the sera are preabsorbed with platelets). The monoclonal antibody immobilization of granulocyte antigens (MAIGA) assay\textsuperscript{43,65} utilizes monoclonal antibodies to capture solubilized target membrane glycoproteins that have bound human antibody. The principle behind this assay is identical to the monoclonal antibody immobilization of platelet antigens (MAIPA) assay (Section 12.4.2.2). These glycoprotein-specific assays avoid interference by HLA antibodies and immune complexes. Thus, the MAIGA enables the elucidation of complex mixtures of granulocyte-reactive antibodies with different specificities. The limited availability of monoclonal antibodies to capture all the relevant granulocyte glycoproteins restricts the application of the MAIGA assay, but granulocyte antibodies reactive with FcγRIIIb, HNA-2a and CD11/18 can be detected and identified.\textsuperscript{26,43,44} The assay is unable to detect all antibodies because stearic hindrance by the monoclonal antibodies used to capture the granulocyte antigens can prevent the binding of the human antibodies in the patient’s serum.

Several other techniques have recently been applied to the detection of granulocyte-specific antibodies and may be used in the diagnosis of alloimmune neutropenia. These include the granulocyte chemiluminescence test, immunoprecipitation, immunoblotting and the mixed passive haemagglutination assay. These techniques are often used to supplement the granulocyte agglutination, immunofluorescence or MAIGA assays and thereby improve the reliability of diagnosis. The granulocyte chemiluminescence test is a rapid functional assay which measures the interaction between human monocytes and opsonised granulocytes.\textsuperscript{66} This test is analogous to an assay which measures the chemiluminescent response of monocytes to sensitized red cells (Section 8.4.4). The granulocyte chemiluminescence test provides a measure of the functional activity of granulocyte antibodies and has been shown to be of comparable sensitivity to the granulocyte immunofluorescence test in the detection of granulocyte-specific antibodies.\textsuperscript{67} However, without preabsorption of sera with platelets, the granulocyte chemiluminescence test is unable to discriminate between HLA- and granulocyte-specific antibodies. Immunoprecipitation and immunoblotting have been used for the biochemical localization of antigens.
The recently described mixed passive haemagglutination assay has the advantage of utilizing extracted and immobilized granulocyte antigens which can be stored at −80°C for at least a year. The development of HNA-transfected cell lines and the expression of recombinant molecules expressing granulocyte antigens will probably enhance and/or simplify antibody detection.

13.4.2 Role of crossmatching and parental typing
Crossmatching and typing are important elements in the investigation of suspected cases of alloimmune neutropenia. Crossmatching studies establish whether any maternal anti-granulocyte antibodies react with granulocytes from the father and/or infant – a prerequisite for the diagnosis of alloimmune neutropenia. Crossmatching can be especially important in cases where antibodies to low-frequency antigens are present, since a typing panel of granulocytes may not include cells with the corresponding antigen. Crossmatching may be performed using any of the techniques described in Section 13.4.1, although the interpretation of the results may be complicated by the presence of HLA class I antibodies and it may be necessary to use a MAIGA assay (Section 13.4.1).

13.4.3 Granulocyte antigen typing
13.4.3.1 Antigen typing using human antisera
Until recently, granulocyte antigen typing was restricted by the availability of appropriate human typing sera. Many human sera containing granulocyte-reactive alloantibodies also contain anti-HLA antibodies or other granulocyte-reactive antibodies and these can cause unreliable results in tests which utilize intact granulocytes. The advent of the MAIGA assay (Section 13.4.1) has circumvented this problem for many granulocyte antigens but, at present, phenotyping using the GAT or GIFT with human typing sera is the only available option for identifying the granulocyte-associated HNA-3a, -5a and -9a, and NB2 and SL antigens.

13.4.3.2 Monoclonal antibodies against granulocyte-specific antigens
Monoclonal antibodies with anti-HNA-1a, -1b and -2a specificities have been described which have specificities identical to human granulocyte-specific alloantisera and these can, therefore, be used for antigen typing. Monoclonal antibodies have the advantages of monospecificity and continuity of supply and can be readily conjugated to fluorescent or other molecules. All phenotyping techniques have the disadvantage of requiring freshly prepared granulocytes.

13.4.3.3 Molecular biology techniques for granulocyte antigen typing
The determination of the genetic basis of the HNA-1a/1b antigens has enabled the development of a number of PCR-based techniques for these antigens. In a
comparative study of HNA-1a and -1b typing methods, results of the MAIGA assay (Section 13.4.1) and a PCR assay using sequence-specific primers (Section 7.2.3) were in complete concordance, but the GIFT produced an error rate of 15%. A PCR-based technique has also been described for the HNA-1c antigen and, with the description of the molecular basis of the HNA-4a and HNA-5a antigens, it is likely that DNA typing will also become available for these polymorphisms. An example of the results obtained using sequence-specific primers in a PCR for typing HNA-1a and HNA-1b is shown in Figure 13.2.

13.5 References


24 de Haas M, Muniz-Diaz E, Alonso LG et al. (2000). Neutrophil antigen 5b is carried by a protein, migrating from 70 to 95kD, and may be involved in neonatal alloimmune neutropenia. Transfusion, 40, 222–7.


Fetal and neonatal treatment of alloimmune thrombocytopenia

Michael F. Murphy,1,2 Rachel Rayment,1 David Allen1 and David Roberts1,2
1 National Blood Service, Oxford, UK
2 University of Oxford, Oxford, UK

14.1 Introduction

Alloimmune thrombocytopenia is the commonest cause of neonatal thrombocytopenia, occurring in one in 1000–2000 live births;1–3 this is equivalent to 400–800 cases per year in the UK. The pathogenesis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia is similar to HDFN (Chapter 1):

• The mother is negative for a platelet alloantigen which the fetus has inherited from the father, and maternal alloimmunization occurs in a proportion of women who may have a genetic predisposition to become immunized (Section 1.3.3).
• Placental transfer of IgG antibodies may result in moderate to severe thrombocytopenia as early as 16 weeks’ gestation.4
• The most clinically significant incompatibility is for HPA-1a, the frequency of this antigen being 97.5% in Caucasians (Section 12.3).5,6
• HPA-1a alloimmunization is HLA class II restricted; there is a strong association with HLA-DRw52a (HLA-DR3*0101),7,8 which is present in one in three of Caucasian women. Although the negative predictive value of the absence of HLA-DR3*0101 for HPA-1a alloimmunization in HPA-1a-negative women is >99%, the positive predictive value of its presence for alloimmunization has been estimated to be only 35%, and not all alloimmunized mothers will have babies with thrombocytopenia (Section 4.2).9
• The antibody titre and isotype have not been shown to correlate consistently with the development or severity of disease (Section 12.4.4.2).10

Unlike HDFN, alloimmune thrombocytopenia often affects the first child, and subsequent children are usually more severely affected. Severe thrombocytopenia may cause major bleeding such as intracranial haemorrhage both after birth and in utero, resulting in significant morbidity and mortality. Considerable progress has been made in the laboratory aspects of platelet immunology, allowing more precise
diagnosis of the condition (Section 12.4). The prognosis of the disease has improved, due to advances in both fetal and transfusion medicine, particularly for women with a previous history of an affected pregnancy. The question of antenatal screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia has been raised (Section 4.3), but this cannot be implemented until there are better methods for predicting which fetuses of alloimmunized mothers are most severely affected, in order to justify the risks of antenatal intervention. At present, strategies for the antenatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia are focussed on women known to be at risk due to a history of previously affected pregnancies. In this chapter, the neonatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia and the antenatal management of subsequent pregnancies of women with an affected child will be considered.

14.2 Neonatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia

Since there is currently no routine antenatal screening, most cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia are unexpected and are diagnosed after birth, commonly following the observation of purpura. However, more serious bleeding, such as intracranial haemorrhage, may occur, causing death or severe neurological sequelae in about 25% of affected infants. Intracranial haemorrhage is most likely to occur during or soon after delivery, but it may occur spontaneously in utero in up to 10% of cases. The duration of thrombocytopenia is usually between 1 and 2 weeks, but prolonged thrombocytopenia of 6 weeks’ duration may occur. The need for immediate treatment depends on the presence of bleeding and the severity of the thrombocytopenia. If treatment is required, it should not be delayed while confirmatory tests are performed.

In a survey of UK Haematology Departments, the reported incidence of alloimmune thrombocytopenia was significantly lower than expected, suggesting under-recognition of the disorder. Unavailability of HPA-1a-negative platelets or a lack of facilities with which to prepare maternal platelets were cited as the major causes of delay in treatment of the neonate (Table 14.1). These delays, along with a lack of awareness of the potential seriousness of the disease, have the potential to cause significant morbidity to the neonate.

14.2.1 Platelet transfusion

Treatment of an affected neonate should be with compatible antigen-negative platelets. There is controversy over the transfusion of random donor platelets in neonates – at best, platelet survival is reduced – but, in at least some cases, it appears to be ineffective in raising the platelet count even if combined with high-dose intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) (see Figure 14.1). In one recent case managed by one of the authors (MF Murphy), an apparent response to a pool of
random platelets occurred because two of the four donors, whose platelets made up the pool, were by chance HPA-1a negative.

The maternal antibodies are directed against HPA-1a or HPA-5b in 78% and 19% of cases, respectively;\textsuperscript{5,6} more recent data from over 600 cases from platelet immunology laboratories in Oxford and Cambridge show that maternal antibodies are directed against HPA-1a and HPA-5b in 81% and 10% of cases, respectively (Table 14.2). Approximately 2% of blood donors are negative for both these antigens and can be easily identified using established methods (Section 12.4). The National Blood Service in England has a registry of HPA-1a-negative and HPA-5b-negative platelet donors who donate regularly, and some Blood Centres keep a supply of these platelets (see below).

### Table 14.1 Reasons for delay in providing therapy effective in raising the baby's platelet count

Responses from 93 (31%) of 301 Haematology Departments in the UK to a questionnaire about the postnatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia*  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of hospitals</th>
<th>Reasons for delay in providing therapy effective in raising the baby’s platelet count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Local effects, such as: lack of awareness of the potential seriousness of the clinical situation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>lack of urgency in obtaining results of platelet counts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>delay in notifying haematologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>other (see below) 'Other' local problems cited by hospitals included inexperience of clinical staff and a lack of awareness of the seriousness of alloimmune thrombocytopenia and the appropriate treatment, poor liaison between the paediatric and haematology teams, and delay in obtaining samples from the mother because she had left hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Unavailability of HPA-1a-negative platelet concentrates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Unavailability of facilities for the preparation of a platelet concentrate from the mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Unavailability of a rapid platelet serology service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Other problems (see below)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some hospitals specifically commented on the lack of an apheresis facility at the local transfusion centre, and the unavailability of or delays in obtaining HPA-1a-negative platelets. Some hospitals noted that delays at several stages were additive and that delays vary with the time of day and at weekends.

\textit{Source: Data from Murphy and coworkers.}\textsuperscript{12}
Washed maternal platelets have been used in the treatment of alloimmune thrombocytopenia for many years, with demonstrable benefit. There are, however, logistical problems with this approach:

- apheresis facilities for platelet collection may not be available at the time required;
- platelets need to be washed before use, which may result in platelet activation;
- the platelets need irradiation to prevent transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease; and
- there is a risk of transmitting infection to the neonate.

### 14.2.2 Intravenous immunoglobulin

If antigen-negative or maternal platelets are not available, then IVIG is recommended. There have been isolated case reports describing the successful administration of IVIG to affected neonates, but only one formal study. In this latter study, the response rate was 75%, but the increase in platelet count was delayed for 24–48 hours. IVIG is not thought to be helpful in cases with clinical signs of haemorrhage. It may be used as an adjunct to platelet transfusion if the recovery is prolonged, but should not replace immediate therapy with platelets as the baby will be at risk of significant haemorrhage. In urgent situations, where antigen-negative
Table 14.2  Investigation of cases of neonatal thrombocytopenia in the National Blood Service Oxford and Cambridge platelet immunology laboratories – frequencies of antibody specificities in 154 cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia investigated over 3 years between 1997 and 1999

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibody specificity</th>
<th>Incidence</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HPA-1a</td>
<td>131/154</td>
<td>85.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-3a</td>
<td>3/154</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-3b</td>
<td>1/154</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA-5b</td>
<td>16/154</td>
<td>10.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gova</td>
<td>4/94</td>
<td>4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Govb</td>
<td>1/94</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unidentified glycoprotein IIb/IIla</td>
<td>6/154</td>
<td>3.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unidentified glycoprotein Ia/Ila</td>
<td>2/154</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unidentified glycoprotein Ib/IX</td>
<td>1/154</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

platelets are not available and the neonate is bleeding, then a combination of IVIG and random platelets should be given until compatible donor platelets are available.16,21

14.2.3 Monitoring of the effectiveness of neonatal treatment
The clinical condition of the infant should be carefully monitored and the platelet count measured at least once daily until it is obvious that it has reached a 'safe' level and is increasing spontaneously. If there has been severe thrombocytopenia, a cerebral ultrasound or nuclear magnetic resonance scan should be performed to detect clinically silent intracranial haemorrhage.

14.3 Antenatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia
The recurrence of thrombocytopenia in subsequent pregnancies is high (over 85%), the risk depending on whether the partner’s platelet genotype is homozygous (HPA-1a/1a) or heterozygous (HPA-1a/1b) – indicating a risk of 100% and 50%, respectively.22 Determination of the fetal platelet genotype can be carried out using material obtained by amniocentesis, chorionic villous or fetal blood sampling (Section 12.4.3). In the future, noninvasive typing may be possible from maternal blood (Section 7.4).

The severity of alloimmune thrombocytopenia usually increases in subsequent pregnancies. If a previous pregnancy was affected by intracranial haemorrhage, subsequent pregnancies are at significant risk of severe thrombocytopenia and intracranial haemorrhage, justifying antenatal intervention. As already discussed,
laboratory tests such as maternal antibody titres do not predict reliably the severity of thrombocytopenia, and the best predictive indicator for severe fetal thrombocytopenia is the occurrence of antenatal intracranial haemorrhage in a previously affected pregnancy.\textsuperscript{23}

It is more difficult to assess risk in cases where the previous infant had thrombocytopenia without significant haemorrhage. However, in the absence of any non-invasive test for the severity of alloimmune thrombocytopenia, most fetal medicine units would recommend fetal blood sampling at around 20–22 weeks’ gestation where there was a pregnancy previously affected by alloimmune thrombocytopenia with moderate or severe thrombocytopenia (platelet count less than $50 \times 10^9/l$).

Although there is a risk of bleeding during delivery, nearly 50% of intracranial haemorrhages occur in utero, usually between 30 and 35 weeks’ gestation, but sometimes as early as 20 weeks.\textsuperscript{24,25} There may be more unusual presentations, and alloimmune thrombocytopenia should be considered in cases such as hydrocephalus, unexplained fetal anaemia or recurrent miscarriages.\textsuperscript{26}

Even if there is moderate thrombocytopenia, it appears to be appropriate to start treatment since the fetal platelet count is likely to fall further in untreated fetuses.\textsuperscript{23} If the platelet count is normal or there is mild thrombocytopenia, fetal blood sampling may need to be repeated at regular intervals, possibly every 4 weeks, to detect a significant fall in the fetal platelet count indicating the need for antenatal treatment.

Early delivery at around 34 weeks’ gestation is usually carried out in pregnancies severely affected by alloimmune thrombocytopenia; fetal lung maturity has occurred, and the long-term outlook for premature newborns of this gestational age is very good. Antenatal treatment appears to have improved the outcome of severely affected cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia, but there is little information on the long-term development of those children who have been treated in utero.

### 14.3.1 Fetal blood sampling

The way to assess the severity of fetal thrombocytopenia is by fetal blood sampling.\textsuperscript{27} This allows both the collection of blood (for the measurement of the platelet count and HPA genotyping) and the administration of intrauterine platelet transfusion.

Fetal blood sampling for alloimmune thrombocytopenia is associated with at least a 1% fetal loss and should, therefore, only be performed in specialist centres. The procedure takes a few minutes; a few millilitres of fetal blood is obtained from the umbilical cord prior to and following transfusion to assess the platelet count and the subsequent increment. Most centres give a transfusion of platelets to cover fetal blood sampling for alloimmune thrombocytopenia as platelet counting may
be performed some distance from the fetal medicine unit and because there is an expectation of severe thrombocytopenia. Transfusion may also be needed urgently in the event of bleeding. Platelet counts in pure samples are reliable, but contamination of the sample with maternal blood or amniotic fluid must be avoided – requiring significant skill and expertise. The normal range for the fetal platelet count is similar to adults, but it rises significantly with gestational age.

The risk of complications related to fetal blood sampling varies according to the underlying disorder, the gestational age and the experience of the operator, but it has been estimated that, in low-risk pregnancies, the risk of early fetal loss is 0.6% and that the fetal spontaneous loss is 1.29%. In the same study, no serious haemorrhage from the umbilical cord occurred in a series of 5194 fetal blood samplings including 247 fetuses with platelet counts of less than $150 \times 10^9/l$.

The risk of bleeding complications with fetal blood sampling is higher in pregnancies affected by alloimmune thrombocytopenia. Fetal and neonatal losses were reported in five pregnancies affected by alloimmune thrombocytopenia being assessed for their suitability for antenatal therapy in a large multicentre international study. The five fetal and neonatal deaths were thought to be as a result of exsanguination, but no precise loss rate could be determined because they represented a collection of cases rather than a study of a defined population. They were compared with a group of 44 other affected fetuses who underwent the same procedure and survived (controls); the mean platelet count at the time of fetal blood sampling was lower in the fetuses who died than in the controls, and the incidence of antenatal intracranial haemorrhage in the previously affected pregnancy was greater in the siblings of the fetuses who died than in the controls. Once the authors of this study became aware of these five cases of exsanguination, they changed their practice to perform in utero platelet transfusions when the fetal platelet count was found to be less than $50 \times 10^9/l$. Since instituting this practice, no procedure-related losses occurred in 10 further cases where platelet transfusions were administered to severely thrombocytopenic fetuses, and they strongly recommend this approach. This latter experience agrees with the experience of the antenatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia of another group.

14.3.2 Maternal treatment

Noninvasive antenatal therapies have been tried, with varying success. These include maternal administration of steroids, IVIG and combined steroids and IVIG.

14.3.2.1 Steroids

There are minimal data regarding the effectiveness of maternal administration of steroids alone (Table 14.3). Daffos et al. reported an increase in the fetal platelet
count after maternal treatment with prednisone (10mg/day) from 23 weeks’ gestation. However, in a larger series of cases, the same group found that treatment of the mother with steroids or IVIG was not reliably effective in raising the fetal platelet count, and a fetal platelet transfusion was given prior to delivery if the fetal platelet count remained low.11

There is considerable experience from North America with the combined use of steroids and IVIG, and one study has concluded that steroids do not add significantly to the effect of IVIG. A study of antenatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia in Europe found a significant response to steroids in only one in 10 (10%) of cases treated with steroids alone.34

14.3.2.2 IVIG

There is conflicting evidence on the efficacy of IVIG (Table 14.4). Several reports document good responses to the maternal administration of IVIG (dose 1g/kg body weight/week), both in the prevention of intracranial haemorrhage and in achieving a platelet count greater than $30 \times 10^9$/l at the end of pregnancy.33,36,43 In the most recent study involving 54 pregnancies,33 there was a mean increase in the fetal platelet count between the first and second fetal blood sample of $36 \times 10^9$/l and from first fetal blood sample to birth of $69 \times 10^9$/l; responses occurred in 62–85% of pregnancies depending on the criteria used to define a successful response (see below), and there were no intracranial haemorrhages.

To avoid unnecessary treatment of a pregnancy at risk, fetal blood sampling is necessary prior to treatment with IVIG. Subsequent monitoring of treatment is

Table 14.3 Results of antenatal treatment for alloimmune thrombocytopenia with steroids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of fetuses treated</th>
<th>Prednisolone (daily)</th>
<th>ICH</th>
<th>Platelet count &lt; $50 \times 10^9$/l at delivery</th>
<th>Additional therapy</th>
<th>Study reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>10mg from 23 weeks</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>10mg from 22 to 26 weeks until delivery at 37–38 weeks</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Prednisolone increased to 25mg daily from 27 to 28 weeks in two cases</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>25mg from 21 weeks</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>IVIG 1g/kg/week from 26 weeks until delivery at 38 weeks in one case</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
IUT is intrauterine platelet transfusion; ICH is intracranial haemorrhage.
See also Table 14.6 for the data on two studies using either maternal treatment or fetal platelet transfusions.
### Table 14.4 Results of antenatal treatment for alloimmune thrombocytopenia with IVIG

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of fetuses treated</th>
<th>IVIG administration (to the mother except where indicated)</th>
<th>Steroid administration (daily)</th>
<th>Number with ICH</th>
<th>Number with platelet counts $&lt;30 \times 10^9/l$ at FBS or delivery</th>
<th>Salvage therapy in nonresponders</th>
<th>Study reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.8 mg/kg loading dose at 30 weeks, then 0.4 mg/kg/week from 31 weeks</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>1 g/kg/week from diagnosis of thrombocytopenia</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>2(^1)</td>
<td>Not available(^2)</td>
<td>IUT ($n = 1$)</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>1 g/kg/week from diagnosis of thrombocytopenia at 20–22 weeks (one case received 0.5 mg/kg/week)</td>
<td>Nine mothers also received dexamethasone 1.5–5 mg or prednisolone 10 mg</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 g/kg/week from week 25</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Platelet count at 27 weeks was low and weekly IUTs were given until delivery at 32 weeks</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1 g/kg/week</td>
<td>Dexamethasone 1.5 mg ($n = 3$)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Prednisolone 60 mg/day ($n = 2$)</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 g/kg/week from 17 to 34 weeks</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Failed IUT prior to delivery</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 g/kg/week from 20 weeks</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>IUTs from time of ICH at 32 weeks until delivery at 35 weeks</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Intrauterine transfusion to fetus</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Single IUT given prior to delivery</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Intrauterine transfusion to fetus</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>IVIG to the mother</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>1 g/kg/week from diagnosis of thrombocytopenia at 20–22 weeks</td>
<td>Dexamethasone 1.5 mg (26) versus no treatment (28)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>12(^3)</td>
<td>Prednisolone 60 mg/day ($n = 10$)</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. One death, one with neurological sequelae.
2. In nine cases, where the platelet count fell with treatment, the median platelet count was $25 \times 10^9/l$.
3. FBS (fetal blood sampling) 4–6 weeks after commencement of antenatal treatment. Twelve had a ‘poor response’. Three were electively delivered; nine plus one additional patient were treated with salvage therapy, and five responded with an increase in the fetal platelet count and all five had platelet counts at birth over $30 \times 10^9/l$.

IUT is intrauterine platelet transfusion; ICH is intracranial haemorrhage.

See also Table 14.6 for the data on two studies using either maternal treatment or fetal platelet transfusions.
also by fetal blood sampling, which allows the introduction of serial platelet transfusions (see below), if the platelet count falls. However, a number of case reports\textsuperscript{35,37–42} suggest that this therapy is ineffective in raising the fetal platelet count, and antenatal intracranial haemorrhage has occurred during maternal treatment with IVIG.\textsuperscript{40} Other studies have found a tendency for good responses in the mildest affected cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia, and failure in those most severely affected:

- one study found no effect of IVIG in three severely affected cases and maintenance or an increase in the fetal platelet count in three out of four mildly affected cases, the latter defined as a fetal platelet count of above $50 \times 10^9/l$ in the initial fetal blood sample;\textsuperscript{31}
- another found good responses in two out of eight pregnancies treated, and the two responders were the mildest affected cases; \textsuperscript{44} and
- a correlation between the response to IVIG treatment and the platelet count in the initial fetal blood sample has been noted by a North American group.\textsuperscript{43}

In a larger study, European centres treating 37 pregnancies only found success with the use of maternal IVIG in seven of 27 (27\%) cases, and steroids in one in 10 (10\%).\textsuperscript{34} Therapy was unsuccessful in nine of 27 (33\%) cases with IVIG, and in seven of 10 cases treated with steroids. There was no significant change in the fetal platelet count in 11 of 27 (41\%) cases treated with IVIG, and in two of 10 (20\%) cases treated with steroids. Failure of response was associated with clinical outcome; haemorrhagic complications occurred in three pregnancies where there was no response to treatment:

- intracranial haemorrhage in two pregnancies, leading to neurological sequelae in one and death in the other; and
- cord haemorrhage leading to abortion.

The reported experience with IVIG is therefore quite different in North America and Europe. This may be due to differences in the selection of cases or in the dose, timing or type of IVIG used. However, the most likely explanation is variation in the criteria for determining an increase in the fetal platelet count. In the North American study,\textsuperscript{33} a successful response at the time of the second fetal blood sample (usually 4–6 weeks after the first) was defined as an increase in the fetal platelet count compared with the first and a fetal platelet count over $20 \times 10^9/l$, or a decrease in the fetal platelet count of no more than $10 \times 10^9/l$ from the first fetal blood sample and a fetal platelet count of over $40 \times 10^9/l$. In the European collaborative study,\textsuperscript{34} the treatment was considered to be successful if there was no intracranial haemorrhage, if there was a significant increase in the fetal platelet count assessed by regression analysis and if the platelet count was above $30 \times 10^9/l$ at the end of therapy. The most appropriate criteria for a successful response are debatable. However, 18 of 27 (67\%) cases in the European study could be considered to have had a good response if the preg-
nancies with a plateau in the fetal platelet count were reclassified as successful, and this would then produce a comparable result to the North American study.

It has been suggested that the direct injection of IVIG to the fetus by cordocentesis may be more effective than its indirect administration to the mother. However, this method of administering IVIG has all the risks of fetal blood sampling discussed above, and was not found to be effective by another group.

The mechanism of action of IVIG in the antenatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia is uncertain. Suggested modes of action include Fc receptor blockade of fetal reticuloendothelial cells, feedback inhibition of maternal antibody production, anti-idiotypic interactions, increased antibody catabolism and placental Fc receptor blockade.

### 14.3.3 Fetal platelet transfusion

A number of studies have shown the value of platelet transfusions given by cordocentesis in raising the platelet count, but the platelet count is raised for only a few days. A single predelivery transfusion may protect against bleeding at the time of delivery, but the fetus remains at risk of spontaneous intracranial haemorrhage earlier in pregnancy (Table 14.5). Weekly in utero platelet transfusions have been shown to be effective in preventing intracranial haemorrhage in severe cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia. The two largest series of cases managed with either steroids and/or IVIG or serial fetal platelet transfusions are summarized in Table 14.6.

An example of the use of serial fetal platelet transfusions for alloimmune thrombocytopenia is shown in Figure 14.2. If the fetal platelet count is raised to $300-500 \times 10^9/l$ after each transfusion, it is usually no lower than $30 \times 10^9/l$ 1 week later. This may be considered as a ‘safe’ level at which to maintain the fetal platelet count, and 7 days as an acceptable interval between transfusions in the high-risk pregnancies where serial transfusions are used. If the interval between transfusions is prolonged beyond 7 days, the nadir of the fetal platelet count is less than $30 \times 10^9/l$ (unpublished data). From 26 weeks’ gestation, the procedure should be performed in the operating theatre where facilities are available to perform an emergency Caesarean section.

The volume of platelet hyperconcentrate to be transfused is calculated from a formula:

\[
\text{desired platelet increment} \times \text{feto-placental blood volume for gestational age} \times R \text{ platelet count of the concentrate, which is measured on each occasion}
\]

The feto-placental volume for gestational age is calculated from standard charts. The immediate post-transfusion platelet increment was found to be 50% of that
Table 14.5 Results of antenatal treatment for alloimmune thrombocytopenia with fetal platelet transfusion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of fetuses treated</th>
<th>Platelet administration</th>
<th>Number with ICH</th>
<th>Additional therapy</th>
<th>Number with a platelet count &lt;3×10⁹/l at delivery</th>
<th>Study reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IUT prior to delivery</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>One IUT at 38 weeks</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>IVIG 0.4g/kg/5 days (n = 1) weekly IUT from 35 weeks if platelet count &lt;20×10⁹/l (n = 1)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Weekly IUT from 26 and 27 weeks until delivery</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>IVIG from week 25 with persistent thrombocytopenia (n = 1)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Weekly IUT from 26 weeks</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Weekly IUT from 29 weeks until delivery at 34 weeks</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
IUT is intrauterine platelet transfusion; ICH is intracerebral haemorrhage.
See also Table 14.6 for the data on two studies using either maternal treatment or fetal platelet transfusions.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Platelet therapy</th>
<th>IVIG therapy alone</th>
<th>Steroid therapy alone</th>
<th>Steroids plus IVIG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number:</strong> 15(^1)</td>
<td>4*</td>
<td>4**</td>
<td>2**</td>
<td>3**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mode of treatment</strong></td>
<td>Weekly IUT from 18 to 29 weeks until delivery at 33–35 weeks, apart from one case(^2)</td>
<td>1g/kg/week beginning at 21–34 weeks to 31–38 weeks</td>
<td>Prednisolone 20 mg/day from 16 to 26 weeks to 25–36 weeks</td>
<td>Prednisolone 20 mg/day 1g IVIG/kg/week beginning 14–20 weeks up to 16–33 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number ICH</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>One at 16 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number deaths</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1(^3)</td>
<td>1(^4)</td>
<td>One pregnancy terminated due to ICH at 16 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Additional therapy</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Fetal platelet count fell to 50 (\times) 10(^9)/l at 34 weeks, and then weekly IUTs were given until delivery at 36 weeks</td>
<td>Neither of the two other cases responded to IVIG. Both received weekly IUT from 26 and 31 weeks up to delivery at 33–35 weeks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

* Severe affected babies with initial fetal platelet count <20 \(\times\) 10\(^9\)/l were treated with fetal platelet transfusions.

** Mildly affected fetuses with initial fetal platelet count >50 \(\times\) 10\(^9\)/l were initially treated either with steroids or IVIG alone, or a combination of steroids and IVIG.

\(^1\) Two pregnancies were terminated following ICH prior to fetal blood sampling with no other treatment given.

\(^2\) One patient referred at 36 weeks received a single platelet transfusion prior to delivery.

\(^3\) Fall caused fetal death.

\(^4\) FBS at 25 weeks showed a fetal platelet count of 10 \(\times\) 10\(^9\)/l and resulted in cord haematoma causing fetal death.

ICH is intracerebral haemorrhage; IUT is intrauterine platelet transfusion.
Table 14.6 (cont.)
Study 2, Sainio and coworkers (1999)\textsuperscript{44}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Platelet therapy</th>
<th>IVIG therapy</th>
<th>IVIG plus steroids</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number: 15</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8\textsuperscript{1}</td>
<td>1**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode of treatment</td>
<td>Weekly IUT from 25 to 29 weeks to 33–36 weeks, apart from two cases\textsuperscript{*}</td>
<td>1 g/kg/week from 25–32 weeks to 35–39 weeks</td>
<td>Prednisolone 20 mg/day from 22 to 35 weeks IVIG–1 g/kg for 1 week only at 35 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number ICH</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional therapy</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Only two cases responded to IVIG</td>
<td>IUT given prior to delivery (platelet count 18 × 10^9/l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The other six received IUT prior to delivery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
\* Two pregnancies were managed with a single transfusion; one immediately prior to delivery at 34 weeks, and the other at 28 weeks prior to delivery at 37 weeks.
\** One mother had autoimmune thrombocytopenia in addition.
\textsuperscript{1} One case also received prednisolone 30 mg/day from 24 to 29 weeks.
ICH is intracerebral haemorrhage; IUT is intrauterine platelet transfusion.
expected, i.e. 50% platelet recovery, probably because of pooling in the fetoplacental circulation. The volume calculation takes account of this by introducing the factor $R = \frac{1}{2}$, thus doubling the volume of platelets transfused.

**14.3.4 Serial fetal platelet transfusions compared with maternal administration of high-dose IVIG**

The data on the effectiveness and risks of these two approaches have been summarized in Table 14.6. The decision on which approach to use is a difficult one and is a balance between the more reliable means of increasing the fetal platelet count and

![Fetal platelet transfusions](image-url)

Figure 14.2 Seventh pregnancy of a patient who had had five miscarriages. The last of these was shown to have hydrops and hydrocephalus and a platelet count of only $17 \times 10^9/l$, and the serological findings supported a diagnosis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia due to anti-HPA-1a. The fetal platelet count was less than $10 \times 10^9/l$ at 25 weeks’ gestation in the sixth pregnancy, and a cord haematoma developed during fetal blood sampling resulting in fetal death. In the seventh pregnancy, prednisolone 20mg/day and intravenous immunoglobulin 1 g/week were administered to the mother from 16 weeks until delivery. The figure shows pre- and post-transfusion platelet counts following serial fetal blood samplings and platelet transfusions. The fetal platelet count was less than $10 \times 10^9/l$ at 26 weeks. The aim was to maintain the fetal platelet count above $30 \times 10^9/l$ by raising the immediate post-transfusion platelet count to above $300 \times 10^9/l$ after each transfusion. The fetal platelet count fell below $10 \times 10^9/l$ on one occasion when there were problems in preparing the fetal platelet concentrate and the dose of platelets was inadequate. CS is Caesarean section.
the apparent lower risk of severe haemorrhage with the use of transfusions, set against the morbidity and mortality associated with an increased number of fetal blood samples.

Antenatal therapy appears to have improved the outcome of severely affected cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia. Further prospective and collaborative studies are needed to determine the relative roles of fetal platelet transfusions and maternal administration of IVIG, both in the prevention of significant haemorrhage and in providing the optimal quality of life to the child.

14.3.5 Timing of the initial fetal blood sample

It is difficult to know when it is best to carry out the initial fetal blood sampling whatever the plan for further antenatal management; it is necessary to consider the risk of fetal blood sampling and the risk of antenatal haemorrhage without treatment. More information is needed about the frequency and time of occurrence of intracranial haemorrhage in order to determine the optimal timing of the initial fetal blood sample. As already discussed, there is no reliable noninvasive method for assessing the severity of thrombocytopenia. The majority of intracranial haemorrhages occur from 30 weeks’ gestation until delivery, but a significant number occur from 16 weeks onwards. If treatment is commenced only from 30 weeks then potentially avoidable haemorrhage will occur, and, because of this uncertainty, fetal blood sampling is usually carried out at 20–22 weeks’ gestation.

It has been suggested that antenatal treatment with maternal IVIG be given ‘blind’, without fetal blood sampling, to determine the fetal platelet count. However, it is important to recognize the problems with ‘blind therapy’ without an initial blood sample, which include the following:

- The fetal platelet count is difficult to predict unless there is a history of antenatal intracranial haemorrhage in a previous pregnancy. Fetal blood sampling is required to establish the severity of thrombocytopenia, which determines the approach to antenatal management. If the initial fetal blood sampling is not carried out, treatment will be given unnecessarily in some cases, with its consequent risks to both mother and fetus.
- Treatment is not monitored, and there is no opportunity to change the initial treatment if it is ineffective.
- There is a lost opportunity to learn more about the natural history of alloimmune thrombocytopenia and the effectiveness of different approaches to treatment.

Such a noninvasive strategy is not recommended by the two international groups with most experience in this field, or in British Committee for Standards in Haematology (BCSH) guidelines on this topic.
14.3.6 Strategy for the antenatal management of pregnancies at risk of very early intracranial haemorrhage

In cases where a sibling has suffered an intracranial haemorrhage prior to 20 weeks, the optimal management of subsequent pregnancies is unclear. Fetal blood sampling is not feasible until 20 weeks and it seems justifiable to treat the mother with IVIG from around 16 weeks’ gestation. One of the problems in assessing the benefit of this approach is the absence of a fetal platelet count before the start of treatment. There have been no formal studies of this approach, but there are some data from individual cases, including the following:

- Patient LM31 who had five miscarriages at 17–18 weeks’ gestation; the last was shown to be associated with hydrops, hydrocephalus and severe thrombocytopenia, and a diagnosis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia due to anti-HPA-1a was subsequently made. The next two pregnancies were managed with steroids alone, and steroids and IVIG from 16 weeks’ gestation until the first fetal blood sample at 25–26 weeks’ gestation. There was severe fetal thrombocytopenia in both cases, but no haemorrhage.

- Patient SR31,52 who was treated with steroids and IVIG from 14 weeks’ gestation in her third pregnancy, following the finding of hydrocephalus at 19 weeks’ gestation in her second pregnancy and the detection of anti-HPA-1a. Severe intracranial haemorrhage occurred at 16 weeks’ gestation in the third pregnancy. In the fourth pregnancy, weekly intraperitoneal injections of IVIG were given from 12 to 18 weeks, when fetal blood sampling was carried out and the fetal platelet count was $12 \times 10^9/l$. The pregnancy eventually had a successful outcome.

- Patient PS (unreported case managed by Dr Pauline Hurley and one of the authors, MF Murphy) had a history of intracranial haemorrhage in two previous pregnancies at 21 and 30 weeks’ gestation, associated with alloimmune thrombocytopenia due to anti-HPA-1a. She was treated with IVIG from 15 to 21 weeks’ gestation, and the fetal platelet count at 21 weeks was $11 \times 10^9/l$. IVIG was discontinued and the remainder of the pregnancy was managed with weekly fetal platelet transfusions.

- Patient JL (unreported case managed by one of the editors, Peter Soothill) had a pregnancy severely affected by alloimmune thrombocytopenia due to anti-HPA-1a; there was intracranial haemorrhage at 28 weeks resulting in a handicapped child. Her husband was typed as HPA-1a/1b. Her next pregnancy was managed initially with IVIG from 20 weeks; the fetal platelet count was $220 \times 10^9/l$ at 22 weeks, but fell to $19 \times 10^9/l$ at 24 weeks. The remainder of the pregnancy was managed with a combination of IVIG and fetal platelet transfusions; fetal blood sampling was technically difficult because the patient was obese. It seemed that IVIG produced an increase in the fetal platelet count, and there was a successful outcome (Figure 14.3). IVIG was started at 17 weeks’ gestation in her next
pregnancy, following confirmation of the fetal platelet type as HPA-1a positive, and the fetal platelet count was over 100 $\times 10^9/l$ at 22 weeks and remained at that level for the remainder of the pregnancy, suggesting that IVIG had a beneficial effect.

14.4 Preparation of platelet concentrates for transfusion in cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia

14.4.1 Provision of HPA-typed platelets for neonates with alloimmune thrombocytopenia

In over 90% of cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia, the maternal antibodies are directed against HPA-1a or HPA-5b $^{5,6}$ (see Table 14.2). Approximately 2% of blood donors are negative for both these antigens and the National Blood Service in England has a registry of HPA-1a-negative and HPA-5b-negative platelet donors who donate regularly, and some Blood Centres maintain a constant stock of these platelets. It is a considerable logistical exercise to achieve this, requiring at least 50 plateletpheresis donors to guarantee at least two donations to be available at all times.

14.4.2 Identification and recruitment of HPA-1a-negative and HPA-5b-negative donors

Donors used for the preparation of HPA-1b/1b platelets for fetal and neonatal transfusion undergo extremely stringent selection criteria and, as a result, only one donor in approximately 15000–20000 is suitable (Figure 14.4). These criteria include being tested and found negative for all of the normal microbiological
markers (HBsAg, HCV, HIV and syphilis) and, in addition, being negative for cytomegalovirus, platelet-specific antibodies, HLA class-1 antibodies, granulocyte-specific antibodies, irregular red cell antibodies, high-titre anti-A and anti-B, and the antigens D, K, HPA-1a and HPA-5b. They must also be suitable for ‘double-dose’ plateletpheresis donation and factors such as height, weight, venous access, allergies and platelet count must also be taken into account. HLA typing is normally performed on these donors, as, occasionally, maternal HLA antibodies may result in shortened survival of platelets and, in such cases, the platelets should be prepared from HLA-compatible donors. If not available, maternal platelets should be considered.

14.4.3 Preparation of platelet concentrates for fetal transfusions

The main issues in the preparation of platelet concentrates for fetal transfusions are:

- compatibility with maternal antibodies;
- avoidance of transfusion-transmitted infection;

Figure 14.4 Identification and recruitment of HPA-1a-negative and HPA-5b-negative donors suitable for collection of platelet concentrates for fetal and neonatal transfusion in alloimmune thrombocytopenia.
• avoidance of transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease; and
• adequate dosage without volume overload.

Concentration of the platelet preparation is essential in order to achieve satisfactory post-transfusion platelet counts without an unacceptably high transfusion volume. ‘Hyperconcentrated’ platelets are most easily prepared by apheresis using a modified COBE Spectra LRS which allows the collection of both a leukocyte-depleted hyperconcentrated unit of platelets and a normal adult therapeutic dose. Platelets for intrauterine use should be irradiated to prevent graft-versus-host disease; there is no evidence that irradiation causes significant platelet damage.

While there is agreement that the concentration needs to be over $2000 \times 10^{9}/l$ in order to reduce circulatory overload in the fetus, the precise concentration used varies among fetal medicine units. The COBE LRS product can be tailored to meet these individual requirements as there is a direct relationship between the collection flow rate and the concentration of the final product; thus, the flow rate can be varied to achieve the required concentration. Concentrations in the range 2500–4000 $\times 10^{9}/l$ have been shown to have normal levels of platelet glycoprotein IIb/IIIa and glycoprotein Ib/IX, and have normal levels of activation when compared with normal platelet concentrates, as indicated by surface P-selectin and supernatant Annexin-V.

14.5 Future directions

The current antenatal management of women affected by alloimmune thrombocytopenia, relying on fetal blood sampling and intrauterine transfusions, is invasive and carries significant risks to the fetus. These dangers, combined with the inability to predict the severity of clinical disease have restricted the development of strategies to screen all pregnant women for alloimmune thrombocytopenia and to treat all affected cases. The aim of current research is, therefore, to develop noninvasive methods for the diagnosis of alloimmune thrombocytopenia, for the reliable prediction of disease severity in affected infants and for the effective treatment of alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

Work towards achieving these ambitious goals is helped considerably by the detailed understanding we now have of the molecular basis of the disease. In the majority of cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia, an antibody response to the HPA-1a platelet antigen is only generated in HPA-1a-negative women who carry the HLA-DR3*0101 allotype. Furthermore, this association permits the identification of the fragments of the HPA-1a antigen that bind to the HLA class II molecule to prime helper T cells.

This knowledge and other modern molecular methods will be crucial in several areas. First, noninvasive fetal genotyping in the first trimester of pregnancy, using
the fetal DNA circulating in the maternal circulation, has been possible for the Rh(D) blood group antigen (Section 7.4). Similar noninvasive fetal genotyping for platelet antigens would spare fetal blood sampling of pregnant women with circulating anti-HPA-1a antibodies and a partner who is heterozygous at this locus (HPA-1a/1b).

Prediction of the severity of disease in affected cases would be of considerable value by allowing the reliable targeting of fetal platelet transfusion. Elucidation of the acquired and innate factors that determine disease severity will require cooperative large-scale longitudinal studies and the application of immunological and genetic tests.

Modulation of the disease process by molecular manipulation of the B or T cell and/or effector mechanisms may be possible. In principle, maternal T cells that provide help to the B cells making HPA-1a antibody can be inhibited or tolerised. Tolerisation of T cells requires knowledge of the precise T cell epitope recognized by responding cells. This should be possible to define in most cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia, as an antibody response to the HPA-1a platelet antigen is nearly always generated by women expressing HLA-DR3*0101 and the T cell epitopes would, therefore, be expected to be similarly highly restricted (Section 1.1.1). In some models of alloimmune disease, the T cells responding to the alloantigen become unresponsive after stimulation with a peptide corresponding to the respective T cell epitope or with the peptide bound to the appropriate HLA class II molecules. It may be possible to use these approaches in alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

Identification of the T cell epitopes in alloimmune thrombocytopenia would permit the use of these peptide sequences to construct HLA class II DR3*0101 molecules bound to the corresponding peptide. When made as tetrmers, these conjugates would bind to the pathogenic antigen-specific T cells to allow their isolation and detailed characterization. Furthermore, these class II–peptide conjugates may themselves induce T cell tolerance by binding to T cells in the absence of co-stimulatory signals.

Finally, it may be possible to make 'designer' antibodies that inhibit the binding of harmful maternal HPA-1a antibodies to fetal platelets. It may be possible to block the effector function of antibodies directed against the HPA-1a allotype by combining the variable regions of a monoclonal antibody recognizing HPA-1a with a constant region that will not bind to Fc receptors on phagocytic cells. If these antibodies cross the placenta and do not interfere with platelet or megakaryocyte function then they may block binding of the naturally occurring alloantibodies made by affected women and restore normal platelet function and numbers.

None of these mechanisms of molecular manipulation is yet established in clinical practice. Nevertheless, the highly restricted mechanisms that generate a deleterious HPA-1a antibody response in alloimmune thrombocytopenia suggest that
specific molecular treatments may succeed here before more immunologically heterogeneous diseases are tackled.

**Acknowledgements**

We thank Dr P Hurley and Professor P Soothill for allowing us to report unpublished details on their patients, and Dr W Ouwehand and the staff in the platelet immunology laboratory, National Blood Service, Cambridge, for providing data on the frequencies of antibodies in their cases of alloimmune thrombocytopenia.

**14.6 References**


Fetal and neonatal treatment of thrombocytopenia


Index

Note: page numbers in bold denote illustrations, those in italics, tables.

ABO antibodies
  and HDFN 33–4
  in RhD prophylaxis 79
ABO antigens 33–4
genotyping tests 132–3
ADCC assays (antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity), and HDFN severity 145–6
alloimmune anaemia see haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn (HDFN)
alloimmune neutropenia
  clinical and haematological features 235–6
  differential diagnosis 236–8
  granulocyte antibody assays 245–7
  granulocyte membrane antigens
    antibody specificities 244
    antigen typing 247–8
    functions of 244–5
    granulocyte-specific antigens 239–43
    nomenclature 238–9, 240–1
  'shared antigens' 243–4
  incidence 235
  terminology xvii
alloimmune thrombocytopenia
  antenatal management 257–8
  future developments 272–3
  high-risk pregnancies 269–70
  antenatal screening
    cost-effectiveness 69
    criteria for 64–9
  antenatal treatment
    intravenous immune globulin (IVIG) 260–3,
    265–6, 267–8
    steroids 259–60
  diagnosis
    clinical aspects 219–20
    future developments 228–9
    haematology 224–5
  DNA-based genotyping 227–8
  fetal blood sampling 258–9
  timing of 268
  fetal platelet transfusion 263–8
  platelet concentrates 270–2
  human platelet antigens (HPA) 220–1, 222–3
  incidence 62–3
  neonatal management 254–7
  pathogenesis and clinical features 63–4, 253–4
  platelet antibodies
    assays for 225–7
    and disease severity 228
    specificities 221–4
    terminology xvii
  alloimmunization
    humoral immune response 1–6
    maternal alloimmune response
      to fetal neutrophils 6
      to fetal platelets 5–6
      to fetal red cells 4–5
    amniocentesis, prediction of fetal anaemia
      amniotic fluid optical density 163–4
      fetal genotyping 164–5
    anaemia, in fetus, tests for
      amniocentesis 163–5
      blood group antibodies 154–6
      Doppler ultrasonography 159–62
      fetal blood sampling 165–6
      heart rate monitoring 158–9
      and obstetric history 153–4
      ultrasound findings 156–8
    anaemia, in neonate
      blood transfusion 206–9
      and fetal transfusions 209
      indications for 209–10
      persistence of 204
  antenatal screening
    for alloimmune thrombocytopenia 64–9
    for HDFN see screening for HDFN
  anti-D antibodies see RhD antibodies
  anti-D immunoglobulin see RhD prophylaxis
  antibodies
    blood group see blood group antibodies
    to granulocytes see granulocyte antibodies
    to platelets see platelet antibodies
    to red cells see red cell antibodies
    transfer to fetus 6–7
  antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity
    (ADCC) assays, and HDFN severity 145–6

279
antibody-mediated immune suppression, RhD prophylaxis see RhD prophylaxis
antiglobulin tests, screening for HDFN 42–5, 46 assays
for granulocyte antibodies 245–7
for HDFN severity
antenatal testing strategy 148–9
clinical assays 144–8
quantitative assays 144
serological assays 141–3, 154–6
see also screening for HDFN
for platelet antibodies 225–7
bilirubin levels, in fetus, and prediction of fetal anaemia 163–4, 166
blood group antibodies
antibodies not causing HDFN 36
antibodies rarely causing HDFN 34–6
and HDFN
ABO system 33–4, 79
Colton system 36
Diego system 35
Duffy system 35
K antibodies 31–2
Kell system 31–3
Kidd system 35
MNS system 34–5
Rh system 30–1
RhD antibodies 27–30, 73–4
and HDFN severity
antenatal testing strategy 148–9
clinical assays 144–8
quantitative assays 144
serological assays 141–3, 154–6
blood group antigens
and blood group terminology 21–4, 25
fetal genotyping see fetal genotyping
and immune destruction of fetal red cells 10–11
and pathogenicity of HDFN 25–7
blood groups
genetics of 24, 25
terminology 21–3
blood sampling, fetal
for alloimmune thrombocytopenia 258–9
and prediction of fetal anaemia 165–6
timing of 268
blood transfusion
for alloimmune thrombocytopenia see platelet transfusion
intrauterine see intrauterine transfusion
for neonatal anaemia 206–10
for neonatal jaundice 210–14
cardiococentesis, and prediction of fetal anaemia 165–6
cordocentesis, and prediction of fetal anaemia 165–6
D antibodies see RhD antibodies
D antigen see RhD antigen
desensitization, to red cell antigens, antenatal therapy for HDFN 191
Diego system antibodies, and HDFN 35
Diego system antigens 35
Doppler ultrasonography, and prediction of fetal anaemia 159–62
Duffy system antibodies, and HDFN 35
Duffy system antigens 35
genotyping tests 132
molecular biology 131–2
erthroblastosis fetalis see haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn (HDFN)
erthropoiesis, measures of, and prediction of fetal anaemia 166
Fcy receptors, and immune destruction of fetal red cells 8–12
fetal anaemia, tests for see anaemia, in fetus, tests for
fetal blood sampling
for alloimmune thrombocytopenia 258–9
and prediction of fetal anaemia 165–6
timing of 268
fetal Doppler ultrasonography, and prediction of fetal anaemia 159–62
fetal genotyping
ABO system antigens 132–3
Duffy system antigens 131–2
future developments 134
Kell system antigens 130–1
Kidd system antigens 132
noninvasive testing 133–4
PCR principles and methods 121–4
and prediction of fetal anaemia 164–5
Rh system antigens 125–30
fetal haemodynamics, Doppler ultrasonography 159–62
fetal haemoglobin level, and prediction of anaemia 166
fetal heart rate monitoring, and prediction of anaemia 158–9
fetal hydrops see hydrops
fetal liver size, and prediction of anaemia 157–8
fetal neutrophils, immune destruction of 14
fetal platelets see platelets
fetal red cells see red cells, fetal
fetal spleen size, and prediction of fetal anaemia 157–8
fetomaternal haemorrhage
RhD prophylaxis 108–11
tests for 105–8
granulocyte antibodies
assays for 245–7
specificities 244
granulocyte membrane antigens
antibody specificities 244
functions of 244–5  
granulocyte-specific antigens 239–43  
nomenclature 238–9, 240–1  
‘shared antigens’ 243–4  
typing of 247–8  

haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn (HDFN)  
antenatal therapy  
experimental therapies 190–3  
intrauterine transfusion 178–90  
intravenous immune globulin (IVIG) 175–8  
plasmapheresis 173–5  
and timing of delivery 193  
blood group antibodies see blood group antibodies  
clinical features 203–4  
fetal anaemia, tests for see fetal anaemia, in fetus, tests for  
neonatal therapy  
for anaemia 206–10  
experimental treatments 214  
for hydrops 206  
for jaundice 210–14  
management 205–6  
and RhD prophylaxis see RhD prophylaxis  
screening for see screening for HDFN severity of  
assays for see assays, for HDFN severity and red cell antigen expression 25–7  
terminology xvii  
haemorrhage  
fetomaternal  
RhD prophylaxis 108–11  
tests for 105–8  
intracranial, in alloimmune thrombocytopenia 63  
heart rate monitoring, and prediction of fetal anaemia 158–9  
hepatomegaly, and prediction of fetal anaemia 157–8  
human platelet antigens (HPA) see platelet antigens  
humoral immune response, and maternal alloimmunization 1–4  
hydrops  
clinical features 203  
treatment 206  
ultrasound findings 156–7  
hyperbilirubinaemia, treatment  
exchange blood transfusion 210–14  
experimental treatments 214  
phototherapy 210, 212–13  

immune response, and maternal alloimmunization 1–4  
imunoabsorption of antibodies, antenatal therapy for HDFN 190–1  
immunoglobulin G (IgG)  
and immune destruction of fetal red cells 8–10  
structure 8  
transfer to fetus 6–7  
indirect antiglobulin tests, screening for HDFN 42–5, 46  
intracranial haemorrhage, in alloimmune thrombocytopenia 63  
intrauterine transfusion, for HDFN  
adjunctive measures 183–4  
history 178–9  
outcome 184–8  
and severely anaemic fetus 183  
transfusion procedures 179–82  
intravascular transfusion, of fetus see intrauterine transfusion  
intravenous immune globulin (IVIG)  
for alloimmune thrombocytopenia 256–7, 260–3, 265–6, 267–8  
antenatal therapy for HDFN 175–8  
jaundice, in neonate see neonatal jaundice  
K antibodies, and HDFN 31–2  
K antigen 31–2  
Kell system antibodies, and HDFN 31–3  
Kell system antigens 31–3  
genotyping tests 131  
molecular biology 130–1  
Kidd system antibodies, and HDFN 35  
Kidd system antigens 35  
genotyping tests 132  
laboratory assays see assays  
leukocyte antigens, sensitization to, antenatal therapy for HDFN 192–3  
maternal alloimmunization 1–6  
to RhD, prevention of see RhD prophylaxis  
maternal blood donation, for intrauterine transfusion 189–90  
MNS system antibodies, and HDFN 34–5  
monoclonal antibodies, for RhD prophylaxis 84–8  
monocyte monolayer assay, and HDFN severity 146–7  
neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia see alloimmune thrombocytopenia  
neonatal anaemia see anaemia, in neonate  
neonatal jaundice  
clinical features 204  
treatment  
exchange blood transfusion 210–14  
experimental treatments 214  
phototherapy 210, 212–13  
neutrophils, immune destruction of 14  
oral desensitization to red cell antigens, antenatal therapy for HDFN 191  
pathophysiology of immune cytopenias  
IgG transfer to fetus 6–7  
immune destruction of blood cells 7–14  
maternal alloimmunization 1–6  
PCR (polymerase chain reaction)  
allele-specific primer amplification (ASPA) 122–4
PCR (polymerase chain reaction) (cont.)
  fetal genotyping
  ABO antigens 132–3
  Duffy system antigens 131–2
  Kell system antigens 130–1
  Kidd system antigens 132
  noninvasive testing 133–4
  Rh system antigens 125–30
  principle of 121–2
  restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) analysis 122, 123
  phototherapy, for neonatal jaundice 210, 212–13
  placental transfer of antibodies 6–7
  plasmapheresis, antenatal therapy for HDFN 173–5
  platelet antibodies
    assays for 225–7
    and immune destruction of platelets 12–13
    and severity of alloimmune thrombocytopenia 228
    specificities 221–4
  platelet antigens 220–1, 222–3
  antenatal screening for alloimmune thrombocytopenia 64–9
  antibody specificities 221–4
  DNA-based genotyping 227–8
  and epidemiology of alloimmune thrombocytopenia 62
  and immune destruction of platelets 13
  and maternal alloimmune response 5–6
  platelet transfusion (fetus) 263–8
    platelet concentrates 270–2
  platelet transfusion (neonate) 254–6, 257
  platelets
  immune destruction of 12–13
  maternal alloimmune response to 5–6
  polymerase chain reaction (PCR) see PCR (polymerase chain reaction)
  promethazine, antenatal therapy for HDFN 191–2
  red cell antibodies
  identification, principles and methods 50–6
  paternal and fetal phenotyping 56–8
  and screening for HDFN
  antenatal tests 42–50
  tests following delivery 58
  red cell antigens
  and blood group terminology 21–4, 25
  and fetal genotyping see fetal genotyping
  and immune destruction of fetal red cells 10–11
  and pathogenicity of HDFN 25–7
  red cells
  fetal
  detection in maternal circulation 105–8
  immune destruction of 7–12
  maternal alloimmune response to 4–5
  for intrauterine transfusion
  maternal blood donation 189–90
  testing of 188–9
  Rh antigens
  genotyping tests 127–30
  molecular biology 125–7
  Rh zygosity testing 130
  RhC antibodies, and HDFN 30–1
  RhC antigen, genotyping tests 129–30
  RhD alloimmunization, prophylaxis see RhD prophylaxis
  RhD antibodies
  and HDFN 27–30, 73–4
  and severity of HDFN
  antenatal testing strategy 148–9
  cellular assays 144–8
  clinical uses of screening tests 154–5
  quantitative assays 144
  serological assays 141–3
  RhD antigen
  genotyping tests 127–9
  and maternal alloimmune response 4–5
  molecular biology 125–7
  RhD prophylaxis
  after D-positive blood transfusion 104–5
  anti-D immunoglobulin
    antenatal administration 102–4
    dose of 108–11
    procurement of 112–14
  characteristics and requirements 78–81
  clinical studies 75–7
  economics of programmes 114–15
  effectiveness 101
  epidemiology 97–8
  experimental studies 74–5
  failure of 101–2
  fetal red cells, detection in maternal circulation 105–8
  future developments 115
  mechanisms of action 81–4
  monoclonal antibody development 84–8
  recommendations and guidelines 99–101
  suppression of immune response 98–9
  RhE antibodies, and HDFN 30–1
  RhE antigen, genotyping tests 129–30
  Rhesus disease see haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn (HDFN)
  screening for HDFN
  antenatal tests
  antiglobulin methods 42–5, 46
  choice of red cells 47–8
  enzyme methods 46–7
  manual versus automated methods 48–9
  timing of 49–50
  antibody identification 50–6
  basis of 41–2, 43
  fetal phenotyping 57–8
  paternal phenotyping 56–7
  tests following delivery 58
  see also assays, for HDFN severity
  spleen, role in RhD prophylaxis 79
  splenomegaly, and prediction of fetal anaemia 157–8
  ultrasound imaging
  fetal anaemia 157–8
  fetal hydrops 156–7